Soil Association organic standards for producers

Revision 16  |  January 2009

You can search and download these standards at www.soilassociation.org/organicstandards

Please tell us if you would prefer not to receive printed copies in the future

© Soil Association 2009

Printed on recycled paper made from 100% post-consumer waste, using vegetable-oil based ink and energy from renewable sources
Glossary

Chapter 1
The principles of organic production and processing
1.1 Introduction
1.2 The principles of organic production
1.3 The origins of organic farming and organic standards
1.4 Where we are today
1.5 Developing the standards

Chapter 2
The certification process
2.1 Soil Association Certification Limited
2.2 The Soil Association symbol
2.3 Inspection
2.4 Certification

Chapter 3
Farming and growing
3.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
3.1 Organic farming and the environment
3.2 Employment
3.3 Other statutory requirements
3.4 Records you need to keep
3.5 Labelling
3.6 Genetic engineering and nanotechnology
3.7 External contamination
3.8 Horses and other equines on organic land
3.9 Packaging

Chapter 4
Crop and land management
4.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
4.1 Converting land to organic production
4.2 Planning conversion
4.3 Conversion periods for land and crops
4.4 Managing organic and non-organic enterprises
4.5 Environmental management and conservation
4.6 Managing soil
4.7 Manure, compost and plant wastes
4.8 Mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients
4.9 Heavy metals in soil and manure
4.10 Controlling weeds
4.11 Controlling pests and disease
4.12 Harvesting crops
4.13 Storing crops
4.14 Transporting crops
4.15 Cleaning equipment and storage areas
4.16 Managing water

Chapter 5
Arable and horticultural crop rotations
5.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
5.1 Additional standards for arable and horticultural crop rotations
5.2 Using seed and propagation material

Chapter 6
Grassland and forage
6.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
6.1 Additional standards for grassland and forage
6.2 Conserving forage

Chapter 7
Mushroom production
7.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
7.1 Additional standards for mushroom production

Chapter 8
Watercress production
8.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
8.1 Additional standards for watercress production

Chapter 9
Wild harvesting
9.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
9.1 Additional standards for wild harvesting
9.2 Wild harvesting management plan
9.3 Harvesting

Chapter 10
Animal welfare and general livestock management
10.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
10.1 Principles of organic livestock management
10.2 Keeping livestock healthy
10.3 Livestock management plan
10.4 Managing your herd or flock through conversion
10.5 Simultaneous conversion
10.6 Bringing in livestock
10.7 Keeping organic and non-organic livestock
10.8 Managing sick or injured animals
10.9 Veterinary treatments
10.10 Control of specific ailments
10.11 Grazing livestock
10.12 Housing livestock
10.13 Feeding livestock
10.14 Handling and transporting livestock
10.15 Identification

Chapter 11

Beef and dairy cattle
11.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
11.1 Converting cattle
11.2 Welfare of cattle
11.3 Feeding cattle
11.4 Housing cattle
11.5 Rearing calves
11.6 Transporting and handling cattle

Chapter 12

Sheep and goats
12.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
12.1 Converting sheep and goats
12.2 Welfare of sheep and goats
12.3 Feeding sheep and goats
12.4 Housing sheep and goats
12.5 Transporting and handling sheep and goats

Chapter 13

Pigs
13.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
13.1 Converting pigs
13.2 Welfare of pigs
13.3 Outdoor management of pigs
13.4 Feeding pigs
13.5 Housing pigs
13.6 Farrowing and weaning pigs
13.7 Transporting and handling pigs

**Chapter 14**

Deer
14.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
14.1 Species and origins of stock (including parkland managed)
14.2 Converting deer
14.3 Deer health and welfare
14.4 Managing the grazing of deer
14.5 Feeding deer
14.6 Housing deer
14.7 Handling and transporting deer
14.8 Slaughtering deer

**Chapter 15**

Beekeeping
15.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
15.1 Bees on your farm
15.2 Keeping bees healthy
15.3 Feeding bees
15.4 Siting and managing your apiaries

**Chapter 16**

Livestock markets
16.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
16.1 Introduction
16.2 General requirements
16.3 Application
16.4 Inspection
16.5 Before the sale
16.6 The sale
16.7 Handling of livestock and animal welfare
16.8 Record keeping
16.9 Delivery, collection and transport

**Chapters 17–19** | **Not in use**

**Chapter 20**

Poultry
20.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
20.1 Poultry within your farm system
20.2 Converting poultry
20.3 Table poultry
20.4 Laying poultry
20.5 Welfare of poultry
20.6 Feeding poultry
20.7 Housing poultry
20.8 Access to pasture and range
20.9 Transporting and handling poultry

**Chapter 21**

Poultry breeding flocks

21.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
21.1 Additional standards for poultry breeding flocks

**Chapter 22**

Hatcheries

22.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
22.1 Additional standards for hatcheries

**Chapter 23**

Pullet rearing

23.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
23.1 Additional standards for pullet rearing

**Chapters 24–29 | Not in use**

**Chapter 30**

Aquaculture

30.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
30.1 Organic aquaculture systems
30.2 Managing your aquaculture system
30.3 Managing stock through conversion
30.4 Eggs and youngstock
30.5 Environmental management
30.6 Managing holding facilities
30.7 Managing water quality
30.8 Feeding organic stock
30.9 Maintaining high stock welfare
30.10 Keeping your stock healthy
30.11 Transporting live stock
30.12 Harvesting and slaughtering
30.13 Record keeping
Chapter 31

Atlantic salmon

31.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
31.1 Conversion
31.2 Managing water quality and holding facilities
31.3 Maintaining high stock welfare
31.4 Keeping your stock healthy
31.5 Harvesting and slaughtering

Chapter 32

Trout and arctic charr

32.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
32.1 Conversion
32.2 Managing water quality and holding facilities
32.3 Maintaining high stock welfare
32.4 Harvesting and slaughtering

Chapter 33

Shrimp

33.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
33.1 Introduction
33.2 Conversion
33.3 Eggs and youngstock
33.4 Environmental management
33.5 Managing water quality and holding facilities
33.6 Feeding shrimp
33.7 Maintaining high stock welfare
33.8 Keeping your stock healthy
33.9 Harvesting and slaughtering

Chapter 34

Bivalves

34.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
34.1 Introduction
34.2 Conversion
34.3 Site characteristics
34.4 Water quality
34.5 Equipment
34.6 Type and origin of stock
34.7 Culture methods and harvesting
34.8 Food safety
34.9 Predation
34.10 Handling and welfare
34.11 Processing and packing
34.12 Transport
34.13 Managing waste

Chapter 35

Carp

35.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
35.1 Introduction
35.2 Breeding and youngstock
35.3 Managing water quality and holding facilities
35.4 Feeding carp
35.5 Maintaining high stock welfare
35.6 Harvesting

Chapters 36–39 | Not in use

Chapters 40–69 | Published separately in standards for processors

Chapter 70

Ethical trade

70.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
70.1 Introduction
70.2 Certification
70.3 Employment
70.4 Trading relationships
70.5 Social and cultural conditions
70.6 Origin of products and ingredients
70.7 Labelling
70.8 Record keeping

Chapters 71–89 | Not in use

Chapter 90

Woodland

90.0 Standards you must read with this chapter
90.1 Introduction
90.2 Scope
90.3 Organic woodland certification
90.4 Woodland management
90.5 Protection from stock and game rearing

...
90.6 Controlling weeds, pests and disease
90.7 Woodland fertility
90.8 Managing fire
90.9 Parkland, hedgerows, veteran trees and avenues
90.10 Traditional coppice
90.11 Non-timber forest products
90.12 Agricultural production in woodland
Glossary

A

Ad lib – freely and at will.
Advisory Committee on Organic Standards (ACOS) – a non-executive, non-departmental public body which advises ministers on matters relating to organic standards.
Aeration of slurry – the active addition of air to slurry through mixing, stirring or direct injection.
Agri-environmental scheme – a government scheme that links agricultural production to minimum levels of environmental management and responsibility.
Animal husbandry – the care and breeding of domestic animals.
Animal welfare officer (AWO) – the person responsible for protecting the welfare of animals during handling and slaughtering at an abattoir.

B

Biodiversity – the diversity of plant and animal life in one or more habitats.
Biodynamic – a system of agriculture taught by Rudolf Steiner and based on natural and spiritual principles and the developing science of life forces. It encourages the farm to be managed as a dynamic organism.
British Retail Consortium (BRC) – a trade association representing large multiple retailers, department stores and independent shops. The BRC publish technical food safety standards for companies supplying the retail trade.
Burdizzo method – a castration method using a clamp to crush the blood vessels leading into the testicles.
Burtonising – adding salts to water to meet the composition of water in Burton-on-Trent which is ideal for brewing ales.

C

Carcasses, sides, quarters and primals – the products of abattoir and meat cutting plants. Carcasses are the whole body of the animal, skinned and gutted. Splitting a carcass down the backbone gives two sides. Splitting each side again gives two quarters and further cutting results in primals. Individual portions, such as steaks or chops, are cut from primals.
Cation exchange capacity (CEC) – the total amount of exchangeable cations the soil can absorb. It indicates the potential of a soil to hold nutrient cations (for example copper and iron) for plant absorption. Clay soils containing high levels of organic matter usually have a large CEC, while sandy soils with low levels of organic matter have a small CEC.
Certificate of registration – the document that we issue confirming we license an operation. The trading schedule lists the certified enterprises or products. Both are necessary to market products as organic and are renewed annually.

Certification committee – the experienced staff who meet weekly to decide on difficult or precedent certification issues, for example:

- aspects that the standards do not cover
- requests from licensees for exceptional permissions
- appeals, or
- disciplinary actions.

Chemical synthetic repellent – a repellent made from synthesised chemicals. Coccidiostats – chemical products for treating and controlling coccidial infection.

Companion planting – planting two or more crops together in the same area, to benefit from each other’s presence.

Complementary therapies – medicinal treatment methods such as homeopathy, herbs and acupuncture, often used in addition to conventional treatments.

Composting – the controlled biological decomposition of organic matter in the presence of air to form a humus-like material. Control methods can be intensive or extensive and include various forms of mixing and aerating to achieve high temperatures in the material and ensure even decomposition.

Concentrate – animal feed with a high food value and low fibre content relative to volume, for example cereal grains and their by-products, leguminous seeds, oil seeds, cakes and meals. It may be compounded (several ingredients mixed and processed together) or straight (single ingredient, lightly processed or not at all).

Consignee – a person or company who receives a delivery of goods.

Conversion period – the time under organic management that it takes for non-organic land, crops or livestock to convert to organic production.

Converted breeding stock – non-organic livestock that will never have organic status but which, after the correct conversion period, can produce organic offspring, milk, eggs or wool.

Coppicing – cutting trees back so that they regenerate from their stool or root system.

Crop product – a product made from agricultural crops (for example fruit, vegetables, rice, grains, pulses) but containing no livestock products.

Cross compliance – statutory land management and environmental requirements farmers must comply with in order to receive the Single Payment.

D

Dam – mother.

Defra – Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs.
Defra surveillance visits – inspections by Defra of a random sample of our licensees to check our inspection procedures.

Derogation – permission to use a non-organic input or ingredient when the organic version is not available. This can only happen in specific situations that the regulation defines and may in addition require authorisation from Defra.

DNA – Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) molecules carry the genetic information necessary for the organisation and functioning of most living cells and control the inheritance of characteristics.

Dry matter – the part of a feed remaining after water has been extracted, measured as a percentage of the fresh weight of the product.

E

Ecological diversity – the variety of biological communities or ecosystems in an area.

Ecosystem – a biological community of interacting organisms and their physical environment.

Ecotype – a population within a species that has evolved and adapted to a particular habitat.

EN 45011 (ISO 65) – the international standard for certification bodies to ensure they provide a non-discriminatory and impartial service.

Enterprise – a specific processing system or farm production activity, for example meat cutting, a bottling plant, a sheep flock or a dairy herd.

Environmental loading – a concentration of a substance in a specific part of the environment.

EU Regulation 834/2007 and 889/2008 – the minimum rules for producing, processing, importing, labelling and marketing organic foods in the EU. It also defines requirements for inspection and certification and control by national authorities. It covers production of food for human consumption, animal feed and farm inputs. It does not cover non-food products such as textiles, health and beauty care, gardening products or pet foods.

Extensive husbandry – managing livestock or crops with low inputs, often using larger areas of land. EU Regulation 2078/92 defines some extensive husbandry systems.

F

Farm ecosystem – the biological community of interacting organisms and their physical environment on a specific farm.

Finish cattle – to raise cattle to a point when they are ready for slaughter.

Forage – pasture or other high fibre crops for livestock feed. It may be fresh, dried, or ensiled.
Genetically modified organism (GMO) – a plant, animal or microbe whose DNA has been changed in a way which is impossible through conventional techniques. It has different characteristics to the unmodified organism. Techniques include:

- deleting, adding, doubling, changing or moving genes within an organism
- transferring genes from one organism to another, and
- modifying existing genes or constructing new genes and incorporating them into an organism.

GMO derivative – any substance which is either produced from or produced by GMOs, but doesn’t contain them.

Genotype – the genetic constitution of an organism or cell, as distinct from its expressed features (phenotype).

Herbivore – an animal that feeds exclusively or mainly on grass and other plants.

Holding – a farm or area of land which can be made up of one or more units. A holding may have at least one Defra holding number.

Hydrographically defined area – a water body defined by its geographical limits (such as coastline, natural obstructions or depth contours) or by its hydrological features. It is, in effect, a single body of water.

International Federation of Organic Agricultural Movements (IFOAM) – a global federation of organic organisations working to promote organic food and farming internationally. It sets basic organic standards and its subsidiary, IOAS, has an accreditation system for certification bodies that wish to adopt its standards.

Intensive husbandry – managing crops or livestock in order to maximise production using a high level of inputs.

International Organic Accreditation Service (IOAS) – a wholly owned subsidiary of IFOAM to accredit certifiers against IFOAM standards and certification criteria.

ISO 9000 – an international standard for quality management systems.

Labelling – any words, particulars, trade marks, brand names, pictorial matter or symbols on any packaging, document, notice, label, board or collar accompanying or referring to a product certified to these standards.

Ley – land temporarily sown to pasture.
Licence – this is your certificate of registration and your trading schedule. Your licence will only be valid if you have signed, and are meeting the requirements of, the certification contract. Products you are licensed for will be listed on your trading schedule.

Licensee – someone who holds a valid licence.

Linked farms – farms that work together and share resources and/or products for the benefit of each participating farm.

Livestock product – a product which includes ingredients derived from animals (for example meat, dairy products, eggs) besides any other ingredients.

Livestock production – the production of domestic or domesticated terrestrial animals (including insects) and aquatic species farmed in fresh, salt or brackish water. This excludes the products of hunting and fishing of wild animals.

Lungeing area – the room a cow that is lying down needs to lunge forward in order to stand up.

M

Manifest infringement – such a significant breach of the standards that integrity in the organic system has been lost. It may also result from not correcting a previous critical non-compliance. We will terminate part of the licence or the entire licence.

Marketing – holding or displaying for sale, offering for sale, selling, delivering or placing in the market in any other form.

Meat Hygiene Service (MHS) – an executive agency of the Food Standards Agency, carrying out meat inspection duties. Its remit is to protect public health and animal welfare at slaughter and promote consumer confidence.

Mineral fertilisers – nutrients of mineral origin, such as limestone and rock phosphate.

Mixed cropping – a crop composed of two or more prominent species (for example wheat and rye).

Mixed stocking – grazing two or more species on the same pasture, either at the same time or alternating with each other.

N

Non-compliance – breach of the standards that may be, in rising order of severity:

• Minor – does not directly compromise the integrity of the product but needs correcting
• Major – may compromise the integrity of the product if not corrected, or may result from not correcting a previous minor non-compliance. A number of major non-compliances may lead to suspension of certification for the products or enterprises affected where there are concerns over integrity of the product or whole system.
• Critical – directly affects the integrity of the product, or may result from not correcting a previous major non-compliance. A critical non-compliance will normally result in us suspending certification for the products or enterprises affected or the whole licence.

O

On-farm processing – processing of organic produce on an organic farm for which the producer will need a separate processing licence, for example bottling milk, cutting meat and repacking wholefoods.

On-farm packing – packing of organic produce (such as retail packing of vegetables or eggs) on an organic farm for which the producer will need a separate processing licence. This may also include packing fresh produce brought in from another licensed farmer, grower or processor.

Organic status – the organic certification, or otherwise, of a product, enterprise or operation.

P

Parallel production of crops – managing organic and non-organic crops of the same variety on the same unit. This is not allowed.

Parallel production of livestock – managing organic and non-organic livestock of the same species on the same holding. This is not allowed.

Permanent pasture – pasture that has been growing for at least five years.

Pesticide Safety Directorate (PSD) – an executive agency of Defra responsible for evaluating and registering pesticides in the UK, monitoring their use and taking enforcement action against illegal use, or more.

Phytotherapeutic – standardised herbal preparations consisting of complex mixtures of one or more plants which contain, as active ingredients, plant parts or plant material in the crude or processed state.

Primary ecosystem – an ecosystem which has not been disturbed by man’s activities, for example virgin rainforest.

Poaching – the trampling of land when wet, mainly by livestock, so that it becomes churned and muddy. It damages the soil structure and is a particular problem of heavy land.

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) – a method for creating millions of copies of a particular segment of DNA. It is used to amplify very small amounts of a DNA sequence until there are enough copies available to detect and measure.

Q

Quality management system – the organisational structure, responsibilities, procedures, processes and resources for implementing quality policy and achieving quality goals.
**R**

**Regenerate** – to recreate cells, tissues or organs which have been lost by degeneration or removal.

**Rhizome** – a swollen underground stem commonly used for reproduction and food storage by the plant.

**Rotational grazing** – grazing a series of pastures in sequence. It alternates short periods of heavy use with a recovery period and helps to utilise the forage efficiently.

**S**

**Sanctions** – penalties for not complying with our standards or procedures. We grade the sanctions, depending on their severity. They consist of: ‘minor non-compliance’, ‘major non-compliance’, ‘critical non-compliance’ and ‘manifest infringement’. Definitions can be found under ‘non-compliance’ and ‘manifest infringement’ in this glossary.

**Semi-intensive system** – a farming system that uses supplementary feeding and therefore depends on both natural and supplied feed. Stocking densities are between those of intensive and extensive systems.

**Single Payment Scheme** – a government scheme simplifying support payments to farmers into one payment rewarding compliance with environmental and other measures.

**Soil erosion** – the loss of topsoil, mainly caused by wind or rain blowing or washing it away.

**Species** – the basic unit of biological classification. A group of organisms that have a unique set of characteristics (like body shape and behaviour) that distinguishes them from other organisms. Individuals within the same species can breed and produce fertile offspring.

**Spot inspection programme** – the programme of additional inspections over and above the annual visits. We target those who we consider to be higher risk or where we have identified specific risks, for example end of derogation periods, parallel production, following up complaints.

**Straight** – a single concentrate livestock feed, for example wheat or field beans, that is not compounded with other ingredients. It may be lightly processed.

**Substrate** – a material upon, in or through which organisms can grow.

**Supplementary nutrients** – nutrient inputs to complement the farm’s own nutrient cycles and to correct imbalances and deficiencies.

**Suspend licence** – temporarily withdraw a licensee from the certification scheme. A licensee cannot legally market their products with any reference to organic when their licence is suspended.

**Symbiotic relationship** – when two or more different organisms live together in close association and to their mutual advantage.
Terminate licence – permanently remove a licensee from the certification scheme. In this state an operator cannot legally market their products with any reference to organic.

Traceability code – a code that accompanies a specific product or batch right through the processing and distribution chain. That product can be traced in the associated records from entry to exit of the system.

Trace element – a substance needed in very small amounts for the proper functioning of the body. Examples include chromium, copper, cobalt, iodine, iron, selenium and zinc.

Trading schedule – the document that lists certified enterprises or products of licensees. It supplements the registration certificate and together they enable a licensee to market the listed products as organic. Both are renewed annually.

Turbidity – the cloudiness of water caused by suspended particles.

United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) – official body in the UK that accredits certification bodies who meet the requirements of EN 45011 and other standards.

Unannounced inspection – an inspection for which we give no advanced warning or notice. We may charge for these inspections.

Under-sowing – to sow one crop into another existing crop, for instance a grass or clover mixture into a cereal crop.

Unit – a part of a holding which may be managed differently and physically, financially and operationally separate.

Valid schedule/certificate – one that is current (not past its expiry date) and where we have not suspended or terminated the licence.

Validated training – a process for ensuring that the training meets recognised standards.

Visual field – the area within a 180-degree view. For example with a box, the area within the same visual field as the sales description would be either the side panels, or the top or bottom of the box. It would not include the back of the box.

Water fit for drinking – referred to as potable water or mains water in the UK. Must be drinking quality. Chlorine levels must not exceed five parts per million.

Woodmark – the Soil Association’s forest certification programme, providing FSC forest and ‘chain of custody’ certification throughout the world.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organisations/standards:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IFOAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOCA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OECD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEGEWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USDA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Others:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>α-MES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GMO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acknowledgements

We are grateful to members of the standards committees who gave their time generously to proofread and advise, and to all employees who have been involved with this project for their unstinting support.

Picture credits

Unless otherwise indicated all pictures are copyright of the Soil Association. We thank the following licensees and individuals for supplying images for these chapters.

Chapter 7: courtesy of Oakfield Farm Products Ltd
Chapter 8: courtesy of Vitacress Salads
Chapter 9: courtesy of Devil’s Claw Project, Namibia
Chapter 14: courtesy of Wootton Organic Farms Ltd
Chapter 22: courtesy of Lloyd Maunder Ltd
Chapter 23: courtesy of Ben and Cathy Wetherden
Chapter 34: courtesy of Loch Fyne

Chapters 16, 31, 32, 33, 35, 70 and 90: iStockphoto.com
1
The principles of organic production and processing
The principles of organic production and processing

1.1 Introduction
1.2 The principles of organic production
1.3 The origins of organic farming and organic standards
1.4 Where we are today
1.5 Developing the standards
1.1 Introduction

Welcome to our standards for organic production and processing. It contains all that you have to do to produce and sell your products as organic using the Soil Association symbol.

We have written our standards in plain English to make them as simple and clear as possible. Each standard clearly indicates how you should treat it.

**What you ‘should’ do**

These give the ideal or best organic practice. They say how you should ideally be working.

**What you ‘must’ do**

These state the actual requirements, including what you must get our permission for and what you must not do.

**What you ‘may’ do**

These state what you can do. We say if you need to get our permission for these or if there are other conditions. We have divided these conditions into three categories to be clear about your responsibilities when using them:

- **With justification** – you must be able to justify the use of certain products/practices at your inspection with evidence, such as test results, records, forms, a plan etc. For example, you record why you needed to use the product/practice.
- **With our approval** – we must have approved your use of certain products/practices. This may cover more than one use or it may be in your annual plan that we have approved. For example, you produce an annual plan that details the product/practice which your certification officer has approved and you have a copy available for inspection.
- **With our permission** – you must get our permission before each use of certain products/practices. For example, you phone your certification officer for permission every time, they may ask for further documentation.

Generally, if we do not mention a product or practice, it means we do not allow it so you must not use it. Please ask us if you are in doubt.
Text format

- We have included additional notes to help with interpretation or provide background information.
- We have identified new standards introduced since the last edition with 'New' written alongside them.
- We have identified standards where we have changed the wording or corrected a mistake with 'Revised' written alongside them.
- We have used an arrow [►] to indicate when a standard is continued overleaf.
- We use green text for paragraphs containing principles and best organic practice. These set the context for the standards that follow. They are things that you should do, or work towards, but they are not requirements.

1.2 The principles of organic production

Organic is a ‘whole system’ approach to farming and food production. It recognises the close interrelationships between all parts of the production system from the soil to the consumer.

We have established a comprehensive set of organic principles that guide our work and our standards.

Agricultural principles

- To produce food of high quality in sufficient quantity.
- To work within natural systems and cycles throughout all levels from the soil to plants and animals.
- To maintain the long-term fertility and biological activity of soils.
- To treat livestock ethically, meeting their physiological and behavioural needs.
- To respect regional, environmental, climatic and geographic differences and (appropriate) practices that have evolved in response to them.

Environmental principles

- To foster biodiversity and protect sensitive habitats and landscape features.
- To maximise use of renewable resources and recycling.
- To minimise pollution and waste.

Food processing principles

- To minimise processing, consistent with the food in question.
• To maximise information for the consumer on processing methods and ingredients.

For more detailed food processing principles see chapter 40.

Social principles

• To provide a fair and adequate quality of life, work satisfaction and working environment.
• To develop ecologically responsible production, processing and distribution chains, emphasising local systems.

From these principles the practices that form the foundations of organic farming have been established:

• encouraging biological cycles involving micro-organisms, soil fauna, plants and animals
• sustainable crop rotations
• recycling of nutrients using composted manure and vegetable waste
• cultivation techniques that enhance and protect the soil and its life
• avoiding soluble mineral fertilisers
• avoiding agrochemical pesticides, and
• animal husbandry which meets their physiological, behavioural and health needs.

1.3 The origins of organic farming and organic standards

The origins of organic farming

Three different strands contributed to the founding of organic farming.

• Rudolf Steiner delivered a series of eight lectures to a group of farmers in Germany in 1924. These lectures defined biodynamic agriculture and the Demeter symbol was created in 1927 to identify foods grown by these methods.
• Lady Eve Balfour was inspired by the work of Sir Albert Howard (on composting and agricultural health) and Sir Robert McCarrison (on diet and human health), both working in India. She started the Haughley Experiment on her farm in Suffolk researching the links between the health of soil, plants and animals within different closed systems. Based on this work she wrote The Living Soil in 1943 – the book that stimulated the founding of the Soil Association in 1946.
• Also in the ‘40s, Hans and Maria Müller together with Hans-Peter Rusch developed a natural approach to farming and soil fertility in Switzerland, particularly using rock dusts. ➤
However, JI Rodale in the USA actually coined the term ‘organic’ in 1942 when he started publishing the magazine *Organic Gardening*.

Despite their differences these founding strands shared an underlying basis:

- The concept of the farm as a living organism, an integrated whole.
- The concept of a living soil as the basis of health right up the food chain.
- The whole being greater than the sum of its parts.

So although organic farming involves and develops simple traditional agricultural practices, it is very different and involves a great deal more. Organic farming is not necessarily a low input system, as it aims to maximise the farm’s own inputs. As few inputs as possible from outside the farm are used.

### The origins of organic standards

Apart from Demeter, there was no formal definition or recognition of organic farming until the 1960s. The Soil Association was the first, publishing its ‘standards for organically grown food’ as four pages of guidelines in its magazine *Mother Earth*. The standards ended with a ‘declaration of intent’ for those prepared to subscribe to them.

In 1973 the Soil Association took the next step and formed the Soil Association Organic Marketing Company Limited as a wholly owned subsidiary. Initially its role was to market products grown to the Soil Association standards. However, it soon dropped marketing to concentrate on certification.

Through the ’70s and early ’80s the inspection element was informal and cursory, but this gradually changed as the organic method of production became more prominent. Later, to reflect this change, the company changed its name to Soil Association Certification Limited (SA Certification).

### IFOAM

In 1972 Lady Eve Balfour, JI Rodale and a number of others formed the International Federation of Organic Agriculture Movements (IFOAM), recognising the international nature of organic farming. Their aim was to bring together the various movements and to share information across language, cultural and geographic boundaries. It produced its first ‘basic’ standards (for information and education, not certification) in 1980.

### Governments

By the late ’80s the organic market was sufficiently strong that governments started to take an interest, wishing to protect the consumer from possible
fraud. In 1987 the Minister of Agriculture announced the formation of UKROFS (UK Register of Organic Food Standards).

Its brief was to draw up a minimum UK organic standard, to register the organic certifiers including their inspectors, and to certify those wishing to by-pass the private bodies.

The EU was also looking at organic farming. Based on the IFOAM standards, it published its ‘organic’ regulation (no. 2092/91) in 1991. However, it was not until 1999 that livestock standards were legally included in the regulation. In 2005, the European Commission started drafting a new regulation to replace 2092/91, following the European Organic Action Plan in 2004. The new regulation came into force on 1 January 2009 and is in several parts:

- other implementing rules for aquaculture, seaweed, yeast and imports.

This official definition and control of organic farming also allowed the authorities to give financial support to organic farmers. This stimulated the significant, sometimes dramatic, growth that the organic market still enjoys.

Several countries followed the EU’s lead, including the USA, Japan, Australia and many smaller nations, particularly those exporting to the big trading blocks. Thus the proliferation of national organic laws mirrors the many private organic standards that have emerged.

Partly to address this the Codex Alimentarius Commission of the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO), which sets global standards for farming and food, produced guidelines for organic farming. It used the EU regulation as its starting point. The new EU regulation now references the Codex guidelines as a measure of equivalence for imports into the EU.

IFOAM was also active. It set up the IFOAM accreditation programme in 1992 to provide an international service that would allow ‘one inspection, one certification, one accreditation’.

---

1.4 Where we are today

**European Union**

The EU organic regulation is the legal basis for the control of organic farming and food processing in Europe. It contains:

- standards for crop production (including wild harvesting and seaweed)
- standards for livestock husbandry (including beekeeping and aquaculture)
• standards for processing and labelling of both foods and livestock feeds
• requirements for importing products from outside the EU, including ensuring equivalence to production within the EU
• requirements for inspection and certification of farmers, processors, wholesalers, distributors and importers
• requirements for controlling inspection and certification by national authorities, and
• procedures for amending the regulation, including developing standards for other livestock species (which are under national responsibility until then).

The EU regulation does not cover:
• processing of non-food crops such as for textiles and personal care products
• certification of inputs, and
• non-commercial production (that which is not sold).

United Kingdom

The Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (Defra) is the UK authority. It is responsible for:
• applying and interpreting the EU regulation in the UK
• approving and regulating the private certification bodies
• holding a register of organic producers, processors and importers, and
• assisting the European Commission in approving imports from outside the EU.

Previously UKROFS was responsible for these but the Advisory Committee on Organic Standards (ACOS) replaced it. ACOS’ role is purely advisory, advising the minister on all organic issues. Defra has taken back UKROFS’ original powers.

Soil Association

Founded in 1946 our mission is to research, develop and promote sustainable relationships between the soil, plants, animals, people and the biosphere, in order to produce healthy food and other products while protecting and enhancing the environment.

There are two parts to our organisation:
• the Soil Association is a membership charity that owns these standards and reviews and updates them. As an applicant or a licensee you will automatically be a member. It is therefore your organisation and you can have your say in how to run it and what standards it sets
• Soil Association Certification Limited (SA Certification) is a wholly owned subsidiary company which inspects and certifies farmers and processors to the symbol scheme using Soil Association standards.
We are ‘solutions’ based and bring consumers, producers and all other parts of the organic movement together in one organisation. Our structure reflects the holistic principle at the heart of organic production.

Our main activities include:

- educational campaigns reaching out to consumers, farmers and the food industry, opinion formers and policy makers
- policy research into targeted areas of agriculture and the links with health, environment and animal welfare
- promoting local food and community supported agriculture
- representing organic farmers and serving their needs through conferences, courses and demonstration farms
- setting standards for organic production and processing, and
- certification to these standards (through SA Certification).

### 1.5 Developing the standards

We maintain our own standards as they are the practical expression of our guiding philosophy. We feel this is important:

- to uphold integrity, maintain trust and so safeguard your market
- to continue standards development to reflect organic principles
- to be able to react to new understanding, technical innovation or progress in the market, and also to new threats, and
- for the organic movement to own the standards – they are too precious and too important to be left only in the hands of the authorities.

We aim to review different parts of the standards in rotation so that we can focus properly on only the chosen sections.

Our standards comply with all legal requirements, in particular EU Regulations 834/2007 and 889/2008. Some areas of our standards are higher than those required by law and we also have standards for types of production not covered by the EU Regulation. These include environmental management and conservation, textiles and health and beauty care products.

### Setting our standards

Our standards department is responsible for managing the standards and their development. We follow a set process:

- anyone can propose an amendment to us
- we analyse and research the changes we think are needed and, along with the proposals we receive, make recommendations to the relevant standards
committee (however we aim to undertake more in-depth reviews of a small number of areas so will not necessarily deal with all proposals immediately)
• the standards committee approves (or not) the proposed changes for consultation
• if approved, we make available the proposed amendments to licensees in Certification News, to Soil Association members through Living Earth, as well as on our website and by contacting relevant stakeholders directly
• we collate your responses and submit them to the standards board (or possibly back to the standards committee if they identify issues that need further work)
• the standards board may revise the proposals and approves them for final authorisation by the Soil Association council
• the council gives its final approval
• we publish the approved changes or new standards for you to start applying after a notice period of three months.

Three bodies assist us in this process:

• council:
  i. council members are trustees of the charity, elected by all Soil Association members
  ii. it is the final authority on our standards and appoints the standards board

• standards board:
  i. this consists of an independent chair, the chairs of three standards committees, three organic sector representatives and three lay members
  ii. it directs the work of the standards department and appoints the standards committees

• standards committees:
  i. these consist of a wide range of practical, professional and scientific experts, balanced by consumer representatives and non-governmental organisations
  ii. each committee is responsible for technical evaluation of standards in its specific area.

We set all this down in formal standards-setting procedures and terms of reference – please ask us if you want a copy.

All standards committee members offer their services voluntarily and as individuals, not as representatives of companies. We gratefully acknowledge the huge contribution they make to our standards work through the time and expertise they freely give.
The certification process
The certification process

2.1 Soil Association Certification Limited
2.2 The Soil Association symbol
2.3 Inspection
2.4 Certification
2.1 Soil Association Certification Limited

2.1.1 Revised

Since 1973 Soil Association Certification Limited (SA Certification) has certified farm enterprises, foods and other products as organic. SA Certification is a wholly owned subsidiary of the Soil Association charity. We are registered with Defra to certify organic food production and processing under the terms of EU Regulation No. 834/2007.

2.1.2 Revised

Our certification scheme is accredited to EN45011 (ISO 65) by the United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS).

Our certifier code is ‘GB organic certification 5’.

How we work

2.1.3

We inspect and certify organic farms, food manufacturers and producers of non-food items such as health and beauty products and textiles. See ‘Inspection and certification process’ (standard 2.4.11) for the process we follow.

If we are satisfied that the farmer, food manufacturer, producer or operator has met our standards we issue:

- an annual certificate of registration
- a trading schedule, and
- a licence to use our symbol.

2.1.4

We license every stage, from production on the farm, through processing, to distribution to the consumer.

2.2 The Soil Association symbol

2.2.1 Revised

The Soil Association symbol is the most recognised organic trademark in the UK and has gained the trust, respect and confidence of consumers and producers across the globe. The Soil Association symbol demonstrates that an organic food or non-food product meets our standards (see 2.2.2 and 2.2.3).
2.2.2

Food production includes:

- horticultural and arable crops, livestock and aquaculture
- food processing and packing, distribution, retail and catering – all the operations between farm production and consumer purchase, and
- importing organic food from outside of the EU, either for direct sale or for further manufacturing.

2.2.3

Non-food production includes:

- other products containing organic ingredients, such as health and beauty care products and textiles
- products that are used as inputs to farming and gardening systems
- sustainable forestry and manufacture of timber products (covered by the Woodmark scheme), and
- education and courses in organic agriculture, horticulture and food processing.

Using the Soil Association symbol

2.2.5

The Soil Association organic symbol is a registered certification mark (®) of Soil Association Limited.

2.2.6 | Revised

We have made some changes to our symbol to improve readability and recognition for consumers. The new symbol design is available for use from January 2009 but to reduce waste (for example, packaging) the final deadline for switching to the new symbol is 1 January 2012. Until then, it is acceptable to use either symbol.

![Old symbol](Old symbol)  ![New symbol](New symbol)

2.2.7

You may only use the symbol on your products if you hold a valid certificate of registration from us. You must only use it for organic products identified on your trading schedule.
2.2.8 | Revised

You may use the symbol on company stationery, promotional literature and websites if we certify your entire product range. Otherwise you must only use the symbol if you state clearly which products, lines or ranges it applies to. All uses of the symbol must be approved by your certification officer prior to marketing (see standard 40.10.3).

2.2.9 | New

From July 2010, you must use our symbol on the final (consumer) packaging of the products we certify except where we agree there is a good reason for not doing so.

Note – examples of exceptions we might agree are:

- on temporary or off-the-shelf labels or packaging
- where the label is so small that it would jeopardise other information required by law
- where the supply of ingredients complying with our standards is variable so the product cannot always carry the symbol.

We will be completing a consultation on when exceptions should be made in early 2009. Please contact your certification officer for more information.

What the symbol should look like

2.2.10

You must reproduce the symbol from original artwork. Please contact your certification officer for a copy of the symbol.

2.2.11 | Revised

The symbol must appear:

- complete and upright
- in proportion to the product description
- at least 10mm in diameter (example ‘A’, overleaf)
- in black or white (examples ‘B’ and ‘C’)
- clearly visible
- clear and legible over the whole of a background, for example if used over a photograph (example ‘D’), and
- no less prominent than the EU logo.

You must ask us if you wish to use the symbol at a smaller size than 10mm in diameter (for example on very small packaging) or in a colour other than black and white.
Examples of how to use the symbol are shown below (see previous page):

![Symbol Examples](image)

**2.2.12 | Revised**

The symbol should be:

- on the main face of the label or packaging
- in proportion to the product description, but it works best if it is at least 12mm in diameter, and
- placed on a clear background that extends 30% beyond the area of the symbol (for example 3mm around a symbol 10mm in diameter)

**2.2.13 | Revised**

The symbol must **not** appear:

- against a background that affects the legibility of the symbol (example ‘E’)  
- incomplete  
- at an angle  
- within an extra circle either of an outline or solid colour (example ‘F’)  
- in more than one colour (example ‘G’), or  
- with a different font or typeface (example ‘H’).

Examples of how **not** to use the symbol are shown below:

![Not to Use Symbol Examples](image)

**2.2.14**

In addition to standards 2.2.10–2.2.13 you must also comply with the labelling standards in sections 3.5 (for producers) and 40.10 (for processors).

**2.2.15**

A version of the ‘Soil Association organic’ symbol is available in Welsh.
2.2.16 | New
From 1 July 2010 and at least before 1 January 2012, your labels of packaged organic products must also include the EU logo. Your certifier code must be placed directly under the logo followed by a declaration of where the ingredients have been farmed. Please refer to sections 3.5 (for producers) and 40.10 (for processors) for further information.

2.2.17 | Revised
Our certifier code is ‘GB organic certification 5’; it must appear directly under the EU logo. This certifier code will replace the old certifier code ‘organic certification UK5’. You must use the new certifier code from 1 July 2010 and at least before 1 January 2012 but until then, it is acceptable to use either code. Please refer to sections 3.5 (for producers) and 40.10 (for processors), for when to use ‘GB organic certification 5’.

2.2.18 | Revised
You may use the approved product symbol (which replaces the certified product symbol from January 2009) on non-organic products such as salt and agricultural inputs certified under our approved products scheme. You may not use the Soil Association organic symbol on these products. Please ask us if you would like further information on this scheme.

2.3 | Inspection
2.3.1
Our inspectors check your operation to make sure that it meets our standards. The inspector will give you an inspection report.

We will draw up an action summary form (either at inspection or we will send it to you afterwards). This lists areas that do not comply with the standards and asks how you will correct them.
We may impose sanctions depending on the severity of the weakness. We grade these as:

- minor non-compliance
- major non-compliance
- critical non-compliance, or
- manifest infringement.

We may also ask for extra information to complete the approval process.

### 2.3.2

You must complete the action summary form with the actions you will take to comply with the standards, and return it to us with any other information we request before the deadline we give you.

When we have received your completed form and agreed that the information you have given is satisfactory we will approve the action summary form.

We will then issue your licence if you are an applicant or continue it if you are a licensee.

We may suspend or even terminate your licence if you do not send the completed form, or the information we request, within the deadlines. If your licence is suspended you must not trade as organic.

### Additional inspections

### 2.3.3

We may do extra inspections throughout the year if:

- you wish to add a new enterprise to your licence
- you move to new premises
- we receive a complaint regarding your business
- you are selected as part of our spot inspection programme
- we need to inspect again to make sure you have corrected non-compliances, or
- our risk assessment of your operations suggests the need for this.

These may be announced or unannounced. We may charge you for these inspections. UKAS or Defra inspectors may accompany our inspectors.

Defra may also inspect you as part of their surveillance of our inspection procedures.
2.3.4

If you are an international group licensee you must comply with section 8.3 of IFOAM ‘Norms for Organic Production and Processing’. Please refer to www.ifoam.org

2.4 | Certification

2.4.1

You must have available the current Soil Association standards relevant to your organic enterprises.

2.4.2

You must comply with all relevant standards for each enterprise or product shown on your trading schedule.

2.4.3

If you suspect or know a product you have produced, or another operator has supplied to you, does not comply with these standards, you must stop trading it and tell us immediately.

2.4.4

You may sell, or process for other companies to sell, only those products listed on your valid trading schedule.

2.4.5

If you sell direct to the public you must display your certificate of registration in a prominent place at the point of sale for consumers to see. You must also have your most up-to-date trading schedule available if consumers wish to see it.

2.4.6 | Revised

If you wish to use our symbol, the wording ‘GB organic certification 5’ or reference to SA Certification or Soil Association on your product, it must be licensed by us. For the application process see standard 2.4.11.

2.4.7

Once we license you we will send you a new certificate of registration every 12 months. This is subject to you paying us your annual certification fees and showing by your annual inspection that you are continuing to meet our standards.
2.4.8 | Revised
If you are a producer we calculate your fee each year primarily based on the area of your organically managed land.

2.4.9
If you are licensed under our processor certification scheme we will ask you each year to provide your total organic sales, which we use to help calculate your fees.

Complaints

2.4.10 | Revised
We appreciate there may be occasions when you wish to make a formal complaint to us. This could be regarding service, standards, policy, another licensee or an unlicensed company. We have formal complaints and appeals procedures which are available on request. You can make a complaint in writing, by email or by telephone.

Inspection and certification process

2.4.11 | Revised
You send us your application form and fee

Our inspector visits on an agreed date and completes an inspection report. You both sign it to agree its accuracy

We issue an action summary form identifying areas where you are not meeting the standards

You implement actions to correct these areas

Once we have approved your actions we will issue you with your certificate of registration
Farming and growing
3.0 Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process

Farming and growing

3.1 Organic farming and the environment
3.2 Employment
3.3 Other statutory requirements
3.4 Records you need to keep
3.5 Labelling
3.6 Genetic engineering and nanotechnology
3.7 External contamination
3.8 Horses and other equines on organic land
3.9 Packaging
3.1 Organic farming and the environment

3.1.1 All food production causes some disruption to the natural environment. Organic farming minimises this disruption by:

- limiting the types and quantities of pesticides and fertilisers used
- building soil fertility and soil stability, and
- maintaining and increasing ecological diversity within and around cropped land.

3.1.2 Ecological diversity is an essential part of a successful organic farming system. It is important to manage wildlife habitats as an integral part of an organic farm. This includes areas such as banks, hedges, ponds, species-rich pastures, areas of poor drainage and scrub land.

3.1.3 You should manage your organic farm:

- to be socially sustainable as well as environmentally sustainable
- with respect for good traditional and pastoral grazing systems, and
- sympathetically within the limitations of local climate and topography (such as mountain, hill and upland farming).

3.2 Employment

3.2.1 You should comply with the UN Convention for Human Rights (www.un.org/rights) and the core standards of the International Labour Organisation (www.ilo.org). This means you should allow your employees:

- the freedom to associate
- the right to organise, and
- the right to bargain collectively.

3.2.2 You must not use forced or involuntary labour or child labour that interferes with their education.
3.2.3
We may withdraw your certification if working conditions on your organic holding do not meet legal requirements or the UN Convention for Human Rights.

3.2.4 | Revised
If you have 10 or more workers you must have a policy that ensures you comply with legal requirements for human rights and labour relations.

**Training**

3.2.5
Everyone involved in organic farming and production should:

- be fully trained for the tasks they are carrying out
- be aware of the relevant standards, and
- understand the importance of maintaining organic integrity throughout the production and processing cycle.

### Other statutory requirements

#### 3.3.1
You must make sure your agricultural activities comply with all relevant cross compliance requirements. The Soil Association standards may be above or below those requirements in different areas.

#### 3.3.2
You must make sure your organic business meets all relevant statutory requirements. This includes requirements concerning:

- premises
- equipment
- staff facilities
- general hygiene, and
- protection of food from contamination or deterioration.

#### 3.3.3
You must make sure your organic products meet all statutory requirements. This includes requirements concerning:
• grade
• composition
• quality
• quantity, and
• product descriptions.

### 3.4 Records you need to keep

#### 3.4.1
This section tells you what records you need to keep of your farm operations. If you are also processing your own or brought-in agricultural products you must also meet record keeping requirements in section 40.6.

We have a range of record keeping forms available to help you. Please let us know if you would like any of these forms.

#### General requirements for records

#### 3.4.2
You must keep clear, accurate records of all your farm and on-farm processing operations. You need to keep them in enough detail to demonstrate you meet our standards.

#### 3.4.3
You must keep records of your physical and financial operations for your whole holding. This includes organic, in-conversion and non-organic units on your holding.

#### 3.4.4
You must record any inputs you use, and any outputs from your farm. Your records must enable us to check that output from your farm is reasonable in relation to your management and inputs.

#### 3.4.5
If you fail to keep any of the required records we will not be able to inspect properly and may have to suspend or withdraw your licence for specific products or for your whole operation. You will then be unable to legally market these products as organic, or with any reference to organic production.
3.4.6
You must keep all your records for at least five years.

3.4.7
Your accounting records must include:
• sales and purchase invoices
• delivery notes, and
• VAT accounts.

Complaints register

3.4.8
You must keep a complaints register for your business. This must record:
• all complaints you make and receive
• any response to the complaint and the action you take, and
• complaints you make to others and the action they take.

3.4.9
You must respond to complaints and we will check responses at your inspection.

Specific records of your agricultural operation

3.4.10 | Input records
You must record:
• where you get them from
• what they are
• how much you bring in
• where and when you use them, and
• how much you use.

3.4.11 | Output records
You must record:
• everything that leaves your holding, and
• where it goes.
If you retail your produce to customers you must record this daily.
3.4.12 | Stock level records

You must record:

• the quantities of raw materials, and
• any finished products you are storing.

3.4.13 | Crop production records

You must record:

• the date of the last input of any agrochemicals, artificial fertilisers and other materials we do not allow (this must be recorded for each field or area)
• your crop rotation plan or plans
• your cropping plan for each field or area for the next two years
• the cropping history of each field or area for the last three years, including yield
• manures and other inputs you use as a fertiliser or soil conditioner on each field or area, including source, type, composting treatment and application rate and date
• pest and disease control products you use, including source, type, application rate and date and crops treated, and
• seeds and transplants you use, including the source, quantity, type and sowing or planting date.

Specific records of your livestock operation

3.4.14

You must keep your livestock movement book up-to-date and complete.

3.4.15

When you bring animals in you must record:

• species, source and numbers
• organic status, identification and age
• veterinary history
• quarantine measures taken, and
• date they will reach organic or converted status, by animal or group.

3.4.16

When you sell animals you must record:

• species
• destination
• numbers sold, and
• organic status, identification and age.
3.4.17
When you buy any veterinary medicines you must record:

- purchase date
- name of medicine
- quantity purchased
- supplier
- batch number, and
- expiry date.

3.4.18 | Revised
When you use any veterinary medicines you must record the:

- name and type of the medicine and its active substance
- number and identity of animals you treat
- date the treatment started and ended
- total quantity used
- reason for treatment
- name of the person who treated the animals
- length of the legal withdrawal period in days (see standard 10.9.15), and
- earliest date you can sell the animal or its products as organic.

3.4.19
When you bring livestock feeds in you must record the:

- purchase date
- type and source of feed, such as forage, straights or compound
- percentage of each ingredient
- quantity
- organic status, such as organic, in-conversion or non-organic, and
- GMO status.

Note – you should keep a copy of feed labels.

3.4.20
You must keep details of daily feed rations. This must include the:

- type of feed, such as forage, straights or concentrate
- amount of feed (kg dry matter) fed to each animal or group of animals, and
- quantity of non-organic ingredients fed.

3.4.21
You must keep details of the annual and daily percentage of non-organic ingredients fed to individuals or groups of animals.
3.4.22
You must record the period when your livestock have access to grazing.

3.4.23
If your livestock suffer health problems, we will ask you for a plan to rectify this. During this time and until the problem is resolved you must also record:

- field number, name or grazing block
- animal type, and
- date grazing started and finished.

On-farm packing or processing records

3.4.24
If you are packing or processing your own or brought-in organic produce you must keep the records required in section 40.6. If you do not have the standards for processors, which contains chapter 40, please contact us.

Note – you can check if you need a separate on-farm packing or processing licence by referring to section 40.3 and the glossary.

3.4.25
You do not need a separate licence (but you must let us know) if:

- you sell your own produce (fruit, vegetables or eggs) direct to the consumer, or
- your own produce is processed and packed by another licensee and you keep ownership of the product. For example, meat butchered and packed by another Soil Association licensee.

3.5 Labelling

3.5.1
You must comply with these labelling standards for:

- raw materials
- retail and bulk products
- processed and unprocessed products, and on
- promotional material, catalogues and websites.
3.5.2

Your labels must:

- clearly and accurately describe the product, and
- comply with all relevant legislation.

**Dispatch paperwork**

3.5.3

Your delivery notes and invoices must include the word ‘organic’ in the product description.

3.5.4

If your company name includes the word ‘organic’, this is not enough to indicate that the product is organic.

3.5.5

We can only approve your products when we have also approved the label.

3.5.6

If you print artwork without our written approval and it does not comply with these standards, we may ask you to reprint it.

**Distinguishing organic and non-organic products**

3.5.7

If you produce organic and non-organic lines in the same range, you must ensure that the packaging is sufficiently distinguished (for example by colour, design or wording) to prevent confusion.

**Identifying the certifier**

3.5.8 | Revised

Your labels must include the code of the certifier who licenses the company which applies the labels. If that certifier is us, you must use our code, ‘GB organic certification 5’. This must appear immediately below the EU logo, if it is used.
If it is another certifier, then you must use their code, even if the label also has the Soil Association symbol. For example, if an Ecocert licensee in France labels a product with the Soil Association symbol, the product must have the Ecocert code ‘FR-BIO-01’ and not ‘GB organic certification 5’.

If the company applying the label is based outside the EU, even if we certify it, your labels must not use ‘GB organic certification 5’. Only products we certify in the UK can use this code. Your label must identify us as the certifier (see section 2.2).

3.5.9

Labels of non-food products, such as textiles and health and beauty care, must not include the code of the certifier.

3.5.10

We have inserted the following extracts from section 40.10 for your information. These standards cover what you must do:

• to have your artwork approved by us
• when labelling in-conversion products, box schemes, bulk and wholesale products, and
• when completing dispatch documentation.

### Approving your artwork

40.10.3 | Copy

You must send us draft copies of your labels, promotional material, catalogues and websites for us to approve before you print or publish them. This includes any claims you make about your packaging on the label (for example ‘Green Claims’ and the labelling of compostable and biodegradable materials). We will check they comply with these standards and are accurate, clear and not misleading. We will inform you of any changes that you need to make.

We can only finally approve your products when we have also approved the label. If you print artwork without our written approval and it does not comply with these standards, we may ask you to reprint it.
Labelling in-conversion products

40.10.7 | Copy

To label your product as ‘in-conversion’, the product must:

- contain only one agricultural ingredient, which must be of plant origin, either processed or unprocessed, and
- have been grown on land that has gone through at least a 12 month conversion period before the crop was harvested.

The label must:

- not mislead the consumer that the product is organic
- not include the Soil Association symbol, and
- include the wording ‘product under conversion to organic farming’. This must not be more prominent in colour, size and style of lettering than the sales description of the product. The words ‘organic farming’ must not be more prominent than the words ‘product under conversion to’.

Note – you may use the wording ‘Soil Association approved organic conversion’.

Labelling for box schemes

40.10.42 | Copy

If you have a box scheme selling direct to the end consumer, you must:

- include your company name and address on the box, or on accompanying paperwork
- include our symbol and use the certifier code ‘GB organic certification 5’ (see section 2.2)
- not use our symbol on the box or paperwork if your boxes contain more than half in-conversion produce, and
- wrap and label in-conversion produce separately from organic or make sure that it is identified on paperwork (see standard 40.10.7).

40.10.43 | Copy

If you sell boxes to another company you must label the box as organic and use our certifier code ‘GB organic certification 5’.
Labelling of bulk and wholesale products

40.10.44 | Copy
If you are selling a bulk product, the ingredient information must be either on the label, or on a document with the product.

40.10.45 | Copy
If you send an organic product to another company, including retailers, wholesalers and other licensees for further processing, packing or relabelling then you must label it with:

- your company name and address, and owner or seller of the product if different
- the name and organic status of the product
- the certifier code, and
- a traceability code.

40.10.46 | Copy
For bulk transport you must include this information on separate documentation and include the name of the transporter. You must be able to link the documents with the container or vehicle.

Dispatch documentation

40.10.47 | Copy
You must send delivery notes and/or invoices with goods out. They must include the word ‘organic’ in the product description. It must be clear which products are organic and which not.

Note – if your company name includes the word organic, this is not enough to indicate that the product is organic.

3.6 | Genetic engineering and nanotechnology

3.6.1
You must not use genetically modified organisms (GMOs) in organic farming or food processing. They do not fit within the principles of organic agriculture and once they have been released into the environment they cannot be recalled. They also pose potential risks to the environment and human health.
3.6.2
You must produce organic products without using GMOs or their derivatives.

3.6.3 | Revised
Organic products must be free of contamination from GMOs or their derivatives.

3.6.4 | Revised
You must make sure you prevent contamination during production, processing, storage and transport. If contamination occurs, or there is a risk of contamination, we may decide to withdraw certification from your land, crops or products. We will decide when certification can be reinstated on a case-by-case basis.

**Use of non-organic inputs**

3.6.5
You must get a signed GMO declaration form from your suppliers of non-organic inputs to show they do not contain any GMOs or their derivatives. Depending on the risk of contamination, we may ask you to provide analysis to support this.

Note – we can give you blank GMO declaration forms for your suppliers to complete and also details of how we analyse risk.

3.6.6
You must **not** use any inputs containing GMOs or their derivatives, including:

- seeds, seedlings and plant propagating materials
- inoculants and other microbial inputs, and
- biocides or other crop protection inputs.

3.6.7
You must **not** use fertilisers, composts or manure or other nutrient inputs containing GMOs or their derivatives. This includes:

- manure from animals that have eaten feed containing GMOs or their derivatives within the previous three months, and
- manure from non-organic grazing animals that have eaten feed containing GMOs or their derivatives within the previous three months.
3.6.8

If you wish to use green waste, household compost and other similar nutrient sources, we will review the waste recycling process to evaluate the risk of GMO contamination. We will then decide if you can use it.

3.6.9

You do not need to demonstrate that visiting non-organic bulls, rams and boars, or replacement stock have eaten non-GM feed within the previous three months.

3.6.10

You must not feed your animals with grains, concentrates, supplements, vitamins, minerals, feed additives and carriers containing GMOs or their derivatives.

3.6.11

You may only use mixed, blended or compound and concentrate feeds that are certified by an organic certification body, even if they only contain non-organic ingredients. This automatically confirms their non-GM status.

3.6.12

If you mill and mix brought-in feeds or use straights you must get a completed GMO declaration form from your supplier.

Note – you do not need to give us a GM declaration form for certified feeds, straight minerals and seaweed.

3.6.13

You must not use genetically engineered semen, embryos or breeding stock.

Note – as they are not yet commercially available you do not need to take any action. If they become available we will tell you through Certification News. You will then need to obtain GMO declaration forms from your suppliers.

3.6.14

You must not use veterinary and health care products containing GMOs or their derivatives. This includes the use of medicines, hormones, vaccines, bacterial products, amino acids and parasiticides.

3.6.15

If there is no alternative but to use a GM derived veterinary product, you must treat the animal. If you do not treat a sick animal we may withdraw
your certification. You must administer the treatment even if this would mean an animal losing its organic status. You must let us know if you have used such products.

**Genetic testing**

3.6.16

If we feel there is a risk that traceability has been compromised or contamination has occurred, we may need samples of products, ingredients or other inputs to test for the presence of GMOs. You will have to pay for these tests.

We will only use analysis when the risks justify it and to support your documentation and audit trail.

Analysis must be by the PCR method at 0.1% limit of detection.

**Land where GM crops have been grown**

3.6.17

If you have grown a GM crop you must leave a minimum of five years from harvesting the crop before the land where it was grown can reach full organic status.

3.6.18

If you are an applicant you must inform us if you have grown any GM crops in the last three years.

3.6.19

To prevent possible contamination you must **not** grow a GM crop on any part of a holding, or group of holdings, you own or manage.

**Genetic contamination from GM production sites**

3.6.20

GM crops grown up to six miles from your holding, and in some cases even further, may cause contamination of your land or crops by:

- cross pollination of related crop varieties
• cross pollination of soil life and plants, including weeds, or
• physical contamination by pollen, seeds or other plant residues.

Note – bees are known to travel up to three miles from their hive. This means they may carry GM pollen six miles from one end of their range to the other.

The wind may carry GM pollen much more than six miles, but this has been taken as a reasonable and practical cut-off point to identify potential contamination.

3.6.21
You must tell us if you know of any GM crops being grown within six miles of your holding.

3.6.22
We will assess risk of contamination of your farm and crops from GM pollen. If we identify a risk we will:

• notify you and arrange a visit to assess the risk on site
• take into account the local landscape and prevailing wind, crops grown, flowering times and any other factors that may affect the risk of contamination
• consider if an analysis of GM contamination is needed, and
• tell you our decision and any action you need to take.

Nanotechnology

3.6.23
Nanotechnology involves the manipulation of materials and the creation of structures and systems at the scale of atoms and molecules. This can be either through simple physical processes or by specific engineering. Nanoparticles are commonly defined as measuring less than 100nm – one hundred millionths of a millimetre. Nanomaterials include:

• nanoparticles and nanoemulsions
• nanostructures including nanocapsules, nanotubes, fullerenes (buckyballs), quantum dots and nanowires.

The properties of nanomaterials can differ significantly from those at larger scales because quantum effects start to occur at the nanoscale. These differences may be in chemical reactivity and biological activity, solubility and mobility, colour and transparency, among others. Nanomaterials may therefore introduce new or heightened risks of toxicity, which are currently little understood. The possible effects of these nanomaterials on the environment, human and animal health are currently unknown.
These are examples of known and developing uses of nanotechnology:

- food additives, such as for flavouring, enhanced absorption of nutrients or modifying texture
- health and beauty, such as in transparent mineral sunscreens and make-up products
- packaging, including quantum dots for traceability, UV light filters, nanoclays as gas barriers and carbon nanotubes to alter strength-to-weight ratio
- medicinal, such as drug delivery, DNA vaccines and advanced therapies
- industrial, such as fuel additives and window coatings
- environmental, such as soil remediation
- electronic, such as nanocomponents in electronic circuits
- pesticides, such as pesticide delivery in nanoemulsions, and
- textiles, such as stain and water resistant coatings.

Manufactured nanoparticles include:

- engineered nanoparticles that are intentionally produced to have a specific novel property, such as for the uses listed above, and
- other manufactured nanoparticles that are produced incidentally by industrial processes, particularly modern high energy processes such as those using high pressure (for example, some types of homogenisation).

There are many cases of naturally occurring nanoparticles, for example from volcanic eruptions or in wood smoke; these fall outside the scope of this standard.

### 3.6.24

You must **not** use ingredients containing manufactured nanoparticles, where:

- the mean particle size is 200nm or smaller, and
- the minimum particle size is 125nm or smaller.

Note – we recognise that this standard will have implications for some established manufacturing processes that produce nanoparticles incidentally. Until we research these more fully, we will not apply this standard to them. The standard does apply to engineered nanoparticles.

### 3.7 External contamination

#### 3.7.1

You must tell us if you know or suspect contamination of your crops or land.

#### 3.7.2

If your organic crops are growing next to non-organic crops you must provide an effective windbreak where there is a risk of spray drift or other contamination.
3.7.3
If there is not an effective windbreak in place you must establish a
buffer zone of at least 10m between organic crops and the source of
contamination. You must increase this distance to at least 20m if your crops
are next to sprayed orchards.

3.7.4
You do not need to destroy any crops within the buffer zone, but they must
not be sold as organic.

3.8 Horses and other equines on organic land

3.8.1
The feeding, grazing, health and welfare management of equines on your
holding could affect the organic status of your land. This section sets out
conditions to prevent this.

3.8.2
These standards do not allow organic certification of equines.

3.8.3
You should rotate the grazing of equines, ideally with other species, to control
internal parasites and reduce routine veterinary treatments.

3.8.4
You should give organic feed to equines on organic land.

3.8.5
If you use brought-in compound feeds, they should be organic or approved
non-organic.

3.8.6
If you have less than five equines on your organic land you must
ensure that:

• they are fed non-GM feed
• for 48 hours after treatment with avermectin, you house them or remove
  the dung from the pasture, and
• you treat the manure from these animals as non-organic, as in standard 4.7.19.
3.8.7 | Revised

If you have five or more equines on your organic land, in addition to the above requirements, you must ensure that:

- you have a pasture management plan outlining the control of internal parasites, weed control and soil fertility, and
- you detail how you will limit the use of avermectin.

3.9 Packaging

3.9.1

When selecting packaging, you will be taking into account factors such as: presenting your product in optimum condition, safety and hygiene, security and integrity, cost, production processes, and market requirements.

Packaging of organic products should also meet the best possible environmental practice; consumers expect this too. Therefore, you should consider the environmental impacts of your packaging alongside these factors.

3.9.2

You should refer to the Soil Association guidance document ‘Reduce, re-use, recycle: A guide to minimising the environmental impact of packaging’ to help you meet these standards. Please contact us for a copy.

3.9.3

These standards apply to packaging of products that you introduce into the supply chain.

3.9.4

We define packaging as all primary (retail), secondary (grouping, display) and tertiary (transport) materials used for:

- containing
- protecting
- preserving
- handling
- storage
- delivery
- labelling
- marketing, and
- presentation of your products.
Note – we include bulk bins but not transport pallets in this definition.

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapters 2 and 4 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.5
You must ensure that your packaging meets all relevant legislation relating to packaging, packaging waste, and materials in contact with food.

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 3 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.6
You must ensure that your packaging is fit for its intended use.

3.9.7
You must store packaging in clean, dry and hygienic conditions.

3.9.8
To minimise the direct and indirect environmental impacts of your packaging during its life cycle, you must:

- minimise the amount of material used
- maximise the amount of material that can be reused or recycled, and
- use materials with recycled content where possible.

You must be able to demonstrate, at your inspection, that you have done this for each packaging format you use. You may use a form from us to help you do this. Please contact us for copies and guidance.

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 6 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.9
You must review your packaging against standard 3.9.8 at least every three years and be able to demonstrate that you have done this, for example by keeping minutes of review meetings, or having a formal policy requiring this.

3.9.10
If you use renewable materials, they should be from sources with demonstrable controls over sustainability, for example FSC for timber products.

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 6 of the Soil Association packaging guide.
3.9.11

If you use bleached paper or cardboard, it must be Totally Chlorine Free (TCF). Recycled paper must be Process Chlorine Free (PCF).

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 7 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.12

You must not use these materials in your packaging:

- unlacquered aluminium foils if the food is acidic (with a pH less than or equal to 4.5) or salty (containing more than 2% salt)
- coatings, dyes or inks that contain phthalates if they will be in direct contact with foodstuffs
- polyvinyl chloride (PVC)

Note – you may use other chlorinated plastics, such as PVdC.

- materials or substances that contain, have been derived from, or manufactured using, genetically modified organisms or genetically engineered enzymes
- synthetic coatings for cheese if they contain fungicides, or
- wood that has been treated with preservatives.

Note – this includes bulk bins but not transport pallets.

You must be able to prove to us that you have not used these materials, for example by having written confirmation from your supplier.

3.9.13

For packaging that you reuse, you must:

- make sure it is in good repair, clean and free of contamination, and
- if previously used for non-organic products, clean it so that no residues remain.

3.9.14

If you use transparent synthetic coatings for cheese, you must explain that they are non-organic on the label.

3.9.15

For any compostable or biodegradable primary packaging (other than paper, cardboard and wood) that you use, you must:

- ensure that it conforms with the European standard for compostable packaging (EN13432), and
• clearly label it to indicate the best means of disposal (see section 40.10, copied in section 3.5, on labelling and approving your artwork).

Note – these materials are often derived from genetically modified organisms or use genetically engineered enzymes in their manufacture. Use of such materials is not permitted under standard 3.9.12.

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 7 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.16

You must ensure that any environmental information, claims and symbols on your packaging are clear, truthful and accurate and conform to Defra’s Green Claims code (see section 40.10, copied in section 3.5, on labelling and approving your artwork).

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 9 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.17

You should provide consumers with information about your packaging, for example, about the materials you have selected, its purpose, and how they can minimise its environmental impact at disposal.

Note – for guidance, please refer to chapter 9 of the Soil Association packaging guide.

3.9.18

If your packaging does not comply with these standards, we will ask you to revise it.
Crop and land management
4.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing

Crop and land management

4.1 Converting land to organic production
4.2 Planning conversion
4.3 Conversion periods for land and crops
4.4 Managing organic and non-organic enterprises
4.5 Environmental management and conservation
4.6 Managing soil
4.7 Manure, compost and plant wastes
4.8 Mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients
4.9 Heavy metals in soil and manure
4.10 Controlling weeds
4.11 Controlling pests and disease
4.12 Harvesting crops
4.13 Storing crops
4.14 Transporting crops
4.15 Cleaning equipment and storage areas
4.16 Managing water
4.1 Converting land to organic production

4.1.1

You should convert your whole farm, including all of your crop production and animal husbandry, to organic management over a period of time.

4.1.2

The rate that you convert your farm should depend on:

- how you manage your existing farming operations
- your knowledge and experience of organic production
- your farm’s ecological situation, and
- your farm’s financial situation.

4.1.3

When you are converting to an organic production system you must:

- only use materials and practices we allow in these standards
- keep to a conversion plan agreed with us, and
- have your production system monitored by us.

4.1.4 Revised

Any land that was primary habitat or an area of High Conservation Value (HCV) after January 2007 must not be cleared or used for organic farming. There are six criteria for defining an HCV area. Only one of these criteria needs to be met for an area of land to have high conservation value. These are:

- areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity such as refugia, endemic or endangered species
- globally, regionally or nationally significant large landscape-level habitat where viable populations of most, if not all, naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance
- areas that contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems
- areas that provide basic ecosystem services in critical situations such as watershed protection or erosion control
- areas fundamental to meeting the basic needs of local communities as a source of food, water or income
- areas critical to local communities’ traditional, cultural identity (this will be identified in cooperation with the local community).

An HCV area not only includes the characteristic of critical importance but also the surrounding area required to maintain or enhance the high conservation value. You can identify an HCV area by looking at land use records, consulting with the appropriate authority, a regional or local...
conservation body and local communities. If sufficient information is not available to identify primary habitat or an HCV area then we will take the precautionary approach and not certify the land.

### 4.1.5 | New

For farmland that was primary habitat or an HCV area at any time between 1 January 1994 and 1 January 2007 you must put in place a conservation plan to compensate, in part, for the loss of biodiversity.

Note – we will implement these standards for palm oil and its derivatives from 2011. For other products we will introduce a timeline for compliance when this standard is reviewed in 2011.

### 4.2 Planning conversion

#### 4.2.1

You must provide us with a conversion plan showing how you will meet all areas of these standards, keeping it updated as necessary.

#### 4.2.2

Your conversion plan must show that the areas of land you convert are:

- large enough to allow you to develop and sustain your organic production system, and
- physically separate and identifiable from non-organic areas.

#### 4.2.3

Your conversion must result in a financially separate unit with its own accounts and record keeping system. You must meet the record keeping requirements of section 3.4 of these standards.

#### 4.2.4

You must make sure that by the time your livestock operation reaches organic status, any land on your unit used for their grazing or feed is either organic or in-conversion.

Note – you may have other separate units of your holding which you are converting over a longer time period.
4.2.5
If in the last two years you have grown crops that reduce the nutrients in the soil in any of your fields (exploitative crops such as cereals), you must start the conversion of those fields with a fertility building phase.

4.2.6
You must give us your conversion plan at the start of your conversion period. It must cover the period of a complete crop rotation and must include your:

- soil management programme (see section 4.6)
- cropping plans and proposed crop rotations (see chapter 5)
- programme for supplying nutrients to your crops (see sections 4.6–4.8)
- programme for controlling pests, diseases and weeds (see sections 4.10 and 4.11)
- plans for managing each enterprise (see relevant chapters 5–9)
- grazing practices and grassland management – how they fit into your crop rotations and how you will use them to minimise livestock parasites (see chapters 6, 10 and relevant chapters 11–23 for individual species)
- environmental conservation methods (see section 4.5)
- livestock management plan (see section 10.3), and
- recent soil analysis results with any recommendations made.

Note – please contact our producer certification team for guidance on the above.

4.3 Conversion periods for land and crops

Licensing your land and crops

4.3.1
We can only license your land as in-conversion after:

- we have received and approved your application form and conversion plan
- we have inspected the land, crops and production methods you are using, and
- we have agreed the date you started managing your land to organic standards.

We will then send you a trading schedule listing your land as in-conversion from that date.
4.3.2
We can only send you a trading schedule listing your crops as in-conversion after:

- we license your land as in-conversion
- we have monitored your organic management for at least 12 months, and
- we are satisfied you have grown the crops to full organic standards during that time.

Selling your crops as ‘in-conversion’ or ‘organic’

4.3.3 Revised
To refer to your crop as ‘in-conversion’, the crop must:

- be listed on your trading schedule as ‘in-conversion’, and
- have been grown on land that has completed its first year of conversion before the crop was harvested.

4.3.4
You must not use the Soil Association symbol on in-conversion produce.

4.3.5
When labelling produce as ‘in-conversion’ the label must:

- not mislead the consumer that the product is organic
- not include the Soil Association symbol, and
- include the wording ‘product under conversion to organic farming’.

This wording must not be more prominent in colour, size and style of lettering than the sales description of the product. The words ‘organic farming’ must not be more prominent than the words ‘product under conversion to’.

4.3.6
You must only sell your crops as organic and use the Soil Association symbol after:

- the crops have completed the appropriate conversion periods (see standards 4.3.7–4.3.16)
- we are satisfied you have grown the crops to full organic standards, and
- we have sent you a trading schedule detailing their organic status.
4.3.7

Conversion periods

Your land and crops must complete the following conversion periods from the agreed start date of conversion:

- all land – 24 months
- crops grown on your land:
  - arable and horticultural crops – 24 months before the sowing or planting of the organic crops
  - grass – 24 months before grazing or cutting for organic hay or silage
  - perennial crops already in the ground (other than grass or forage) – 36 months before harvesting organic crops
  - non-organic perennial crops planted, with our permission, into in-conversion land – 12 months from planting or when the land becomes organic, whichever is longest
  - organic perennial crops planted into in-conversion land – can be harvested as organic when the land becomes organic.

Note – you can find the conversion periods for livestock in the following sections:

- general: 10.4
- simultaneous conversion: 10.5
- cattle: 11.1
- sheep and goats: 12.1
- pigs: 13.1
- deer: 14.2
- bees: 15.1
- poultry: 20.2–20.4

4.3.8

In certain cases we may decide to extend or agree to reduce the conversion period by taking into account how you have managed your land before it begins conversion.

4.3.9

We may extend the conversion period, or decide that your land is not suitable for conversion, if your land has been contaminated by:

- environmental pollution, for example from factories or heavy traffic
- previous applications of sewage sludge, or
- residual pesticides.
4.3.10 | Revised

With our approval, you may reduce the conversion period by up to four months if you can show that:

- you managed the land to organic standards before your application date, and
- you have full records to show you have not used anything we do not allow on this land for the period of this reduction.

4.3.11

Your competent authority (in the UK this is Defra) must approve any reduction of more than four months and up to 12 months. To be considered for a reduced conversion period you must:

- have managed the land under a recognised agri-environmental scheme that prohibits any pesticides or fertilisers that we do not allow, and
- have full records or other documentary evidence to show you have not used anything we do not allow on this land for the period of the requested reduction.

You must demonstrate this to us at your inspection.

4.3.12

In all cases of a reduced conversion period request, you must also be able to show that any livestock that have used the land have not been fed GM feeds during that time.

4.3.13 | Revised

With our approval, you may start organic pig or poultry production on land in its second year of conversion but only if the land has not received anything we do not allow for at least 24 months.

4.3.14

You must not switch your land back and forth between organic and non-organic management.

4.3.15

If you have to treat your land with anything we do not allow, then you must inform us. The land will lose its organic status. We may let you re-convert the land but we may require an extension to the conversion period.

4.3.16

If you have to treat an area of your organic or in-conversion land with anything we do not allow as part of a compulsory pest or disease control
scheme, it will have to go through another conversion period. We may reduce the 24 month conversion period based on:

- the material used and how quickly it will break down in the soil or plant material
- how soon the next harvest (which cannot be sold as organic) is, and
- approval from Defra.

### 4.4 Managing organic and non-organic enterprises

#### 4.4.1

Your organic production must take place on clearly defined units of land. We will regularly inspect both the organic and non-organic production areas.

#### 4.4.2

If you run organic and non-organic production units in the same area you must:

- keep organic and non-organic production and storage areas clearly separate
- provide us with full details of the following for both organic and non-organic units:
  1. land areas
  2. crops
  3. livestock
  4. production and storage premises, and
  5. any packing or processing operations
- keep written records so our inspector can check:
  1. the origin, nature and quantities of all materials you bring in and how you have used them
  2. the nature and quantities of all agricultural products you sold and who to, and
  3. that you have met these standards.

### Growing non-organic crops

#### 4.4.3

If you grow the same crops on your non-organic land as on your in-conversion or organic land we must be able to easily identify different varieties on each area.
4.4.4

You must **not** grow the same variety of crops on your non-organic land as on your in-conversion or organic land (we call this ‘parallel production’ and only allow it for the crops listed below).

4.4.5 | **Revised**

With our approval, you may ‘parallel produce’ only the following:

- perennial crops
- seeds, vegetative propagating materials or transplants
- grassland used only for grazing
- crops grown for agricultural research
- crops on farms used for formal education.

4.4.6

In addition, you may ‘parallel produce’ only if you:

- permanently separate the products from each unit
- tell us at least 48 hours before you harvest each crop
- tell us the exact quantities harvested and any distinguishing features, such as quality, colour and size
- confirm you have kept the products separate
- get our approval each year, and
- (for perennial crops only) agree with us, through your conversion plan, to convert the whole area concerned within five years.

### Keeping non-organic animals

4.4.7

If you have non-organic animals on your holding they must be a different species and be on units which are physically, financially and operationally separate. We define these terms below:

Physically separate:

- your non-organic unit must have distinct blocks of land which are separate from your organic unit
- we do **not** allow a mosaic of organic and non-organic fields
- organic and non-organic units can be next to each other but there must be a barrier between them, such as a hedge or fence.
Financially separate:

- you must keep separate financial records
- you must be able to clearly identify invoices for each unit.

Operationally separate:

- you must demonstrate that you manage the organic unit as a distinct and separate operation
- you can use shared cultivation equipment
- you will need to show how you separate organic and non-organic in housing, machinery, equipment for feed, milling and mixing and parlours (for dairy farms)
- your non-organic unit may have the same holding number but may not have the same herd or flock numbers.

4.4.8

With our permission, you may graze non-organic stock on your organic or converting land for a limited time if:

- there are no suitable organic animals available
- they do not graze your land for more than 120 days each calendar year (this is the total length of time that non-organic stock are on your whole holding, not on individual fields)
- they come from extensive husbandry or a system with a maximum stocking rate equivalent to 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year (please see standard 4.7.27 to calculate this), and
- you do not graze organic animals on those fields at the same time.

Storing products we do not allow

4.4.9

You must not store products we do not allow in these standards on your organic unit.

4.5 | Environmental management and conservation

4.5.1

Your management should develop a healthy and productive farm that encourages a balanced and varied farm ecosystem which coexists with natural systems.
4.5.2

You should:

• apply high standards of conservation management throughout your holding to conserve and enhance:
  i. landscape features
  ii. habitats, and
  iii. wild plant and animal species

• co-operate with statutory and voluntary conservation agencies in surveying, recording and managing the wildlife and conservation features of the farm
• carry out creative conservation projects, but without damaging existing sites of conservation value, and
• create wildlife corridors to link habitats, for example making continuous semi-natural habitats containing hedgerows, field margins and verges.

Note – to do this you should be willing to consult appropriate conservation bodies.

4.5.3

You must:

• meet the terms of all legal and statutory requirements regarding the wider environment at all times, and
• maintain public rights of way.

4.5.4

Damage to statutory recognised sites can result in prosecution. We will refuse your application for certification if you have knowingly been involved in damaging such sites within the five years before your application.

Note – statutory recognised sites have legal restrictions on site management. Statutory recognised sites include:

• internationally important wildlife site
• special protection area (EU birds directive)
• special area of conservation (EU habitats directive)
• RAMSAR site (convention on wetlands of international importance)
• nationally important wildlife site
• nationally important archaeological site
• scheduled ancient monument (Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979), and
• National Nature Reserve.
Bodies that designate and monitor the sites are:

- Natural England
- Countryside Council for Wales
- Scottish National Heritage
- English Heritage
- Welsh Historic Monuments, and
- Historic Scotland.

4.5.5 | Revised

You must not, without the approval of the relevant statutory conservation agency, carry out any of the operations notified as likely to damage the special interest of any site with statutory legal protection or a non-statutory or local site (this includes sites formally advised as candidates for notification). You must give us a copy of the consent from the statutory conservation agency for any such operation before the works start.

4.5.6

You must carry out an appropriate scale environmental impact assessment if you are considering doing anything likely to damage a non-statutory or local site. The assessment must include comments on the proposed works by the body responsible for the site’s notification (for example a Wildlife Trust, Local Authority or County Environmental Record Centre).

Note – please contact us for guidance notes on preparing a suitable environmental impact assessment.

Note – non-statutory or local sites may be regionally or locally important wildlife sites which may be called by a range of terms including:

- wildlife site
- site of nature conservation importance (SNCI)
- site of importance for nature conservation (SINC), or
- regionally important geological site (RIGS).

The bodies that designate and monitor the sites are either your local authority or the Local Wildlife Trusts (whose office addresses can be obtained from The Wildlife Trusts, The Kiln, Waterside, Mather Road, Newark NG24 1WT. Tel 01636 677711). Information is also sometimes held by County Environmental Record Centres.

4.5.7

You must not, without our permission, plough, cultivate, re-seed, drain or otherwise damage the wildlife or geological interest of any area of your holding that has been formally identified as a ‘local site’.
4.5.8

We will refuse your application for certification if you have knowingly been involved in damaging a non-statutory or ‘local’ site within the five years before your application.

4.5.9

If you cause damage to a non-statutory or local site we may withdraw certification from the holding.

4.5.10

You must not:

• clear vegetation by burning, or
• burn straw, cereal waste or stubble.

Whole farm conservation planning

4.5.11

You should keep an up-to-date conservation plan for your whole holding so that you manage both your farm and its environment in an integrated way.

4.5.12

You should commission your plan from a competent advisor or organisation who should prepare it with you. It should detail:

• valuable points or sites, including cropped and non-cropped habitats
• opportunities you have to improve wildlife conservation and landscape values, and
• an action plan for further work, including any available grant funds.

Note – if you are a member of the Farming and Wildlife Advisory Group (FWAG) in England, Wales or Scotland, they can give you a farm management plan.

4.5.13

You must identify, on a map, all statutory recognised and non-statutory or local wildlife habitats and landscape sites, and archaeological and historic features on your holding. Your map should be the same scale as an Integrated Administration and Control System (IACS) map, for example 1:10,000. You must formally revise your map at least every five years.
Managing traditional field boundaries

4.5.14

Traditional boundaries such as hedges, ditches, banks and stone walls act as corridors for wildlife through agricultural land and the wider countryside. They are also important landscape and historic features. They perform an important function on organic farms by:

- maintaining a diverse ecology
- acting as valuable reservoirs for beneficial animals and insects, and
- providing shelter for your stock.

4.5.15

You should:

- use traditional methods and materials to maintain field boundaries
- trim your hedges in January and February, leaving some hedges untrimmed each year on a two or three year cycle, and
- clear ditches in stages.

Note – you should either keep a section of each ditch uncleared each year, or clear opposite sides in alternate years. You should agree your rotational plan with us through your farm conservation plan.

4.5.16

To provide habitats and food sources for birds, mammals and insects you should keep an uncultivated strip of perennial grass or wild flowers, planted or naturally regenerated, around any fields larger than two hectares:

- the strip should average two metres wide, measured from the edge of the field boundary or hedge
- you may graze this area, but not plough or use fertilisers, and
- you should cut them only once in a two year period to control scrub.

4.5.17

To allow wildlife to travel between habitats, there should be no more than 200 metres between any part of your arable fields and a permanent area of non-cropped habitat (such as a hedge, ditch or beetle bank). The permanently non-cropped area should be at least two metres wide.

4.5.18

You should carry out risk assessments of all your agricultural practices and their potential impact on the environment.
4.5.19
You must manage river banks to keep erosion and soil run-off to a minimum.

4.5.20
You must get our permission before removing hedges, banks, ditches or walls.
Note – we will allow this on guidance from a conservation advisor and after taking into account any compensatory environmental work.

4.5.21 | Revised
With justification, you may trim hedges annually if your local authority needs you to trim them for road safety or access reasons, or if you can show it is beneficial for wildlife.

4.5.22
You must not trim your hedges between 1 March and 31 August.

Managing semi-natural habitats

4.5.23
Areas of semi-natural habitat, such as moorland, heathland, wetland, grazing marsh, dunes and scrub have reduced significantly in the UK.

4.5.24
You should conserve and enhance semi-natural habitats within your organic farming system by:

• managing your grazing to encourage healthy vegetation and to reduce localised over-grazing
• moving feeding sites on a regular basis to prevent poaching
• siting feeding areas away from sensitive vegetation, and
• cutting or crushing rushes in late August and bracken in late June or July (unless a qualified advisor suggests other times are more suitable).

4.5.25 | Revised
You may:

• burn heather and muir, if you keep to the recognised heather and muir burning codes
• with our approval, sow clover into unimproved pastures provided they are identified in a whole farm conservation plan (standards 4.5.13–4.5.15)
• sow clover on a ‘recognised site’ (standard 4.5.4) only if an appropriate conservation body advises you to do so, and
• cut turf or peat from peat bogs only for your own domestic fuel supply.

4.5.26
You must **not**:  
• improve or add drainage that will affect recognised areas of significant conservation value, or
• allow livestock to overgraze, poach or damage valuable habitats.

### Managing trees and woodland

4.5.27
Trees and woodland play an important role in maintaining the ecological balance on organic farms, providing a habitat for wildlife, including pest predators.

4.5.28
Mature trees and woodland are major contributors to the beauty and amenity value of the landscape. Individual trees and woodland play a vital part in conserving landscape and species diversity.

4.5.29
You should manage your trees and woodland to enhance your farm, local environment and the wider landscape by:
• maintaining and managing your trees in keeping with local custom and woodland practice
• integrating re-planting programmes with existing woodland and trees
• natural regeneration, coppicing and other traditional management practices
• creating new woodland on suitable sites using native species
• protecting newly planted or regenerated woodland against livestock
• using native and local shrubs, trees, seeds and plant material from local suppliers
• maintaining mature specimen trees that are not dangerous
• planting replacement trees if you remove any
• ploughing no closer to the trunk of any tree than a line drawn vertically through the outermost canopy, and
• not planting trees in areas where farmland waders breed.
4.5.30
You must not plant on statutory recognised sites (see standards 4.5.4–4.5.6) unless you get approval from the relevant statutory conservation agency and us.

**Agricultural production in woodland**

4.5.31 | New
If you use woodland or forest areas for organic agriculture (for example for pigs or poultry) as well as woodland products, you must manage these areas to our organic woodland standards (chapter 90).

4.5.32 | New
Where you allow livestock access to woodland or forest areas, but you are not selling any woodland products as organic, you must provide us with a plan showing how you will prevent damage to the woodland. You do not need to meet our organic woodland standards (chapter 90).

**Managing farm buildings**

4.5.33
Buildings are part of the farming landscape. They are wildlife habitats, landscape features and can be of historical value.

4.5.34
You should build, develop and maintain your farm buildings in keeping with the surrounding environment by:

- maintaining and restoring old buildings to their original form, using traditional or local materials if possible
- taking advice from the Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings, Cadw or other appropriate bodies when considering conversion or demolition
- considering the environmental and aesthetic impact when siting and constructing new farm buildings, and
- providing roosts or nest sites of bats and barn owls in new buildings and conversions.
4.5.35
You must get approval from the appropriate statutory conservation agency before you do any work that may affect the nesting and roosting sites of owls, bats and other endangered species.

4.5.36
You must **not** use wood preservatives that are harmful to bats on any buildings.

### Managing plastic waste

4.5.37
You should recycle plastic waste or dispose of it appropriately.

*Note – please contact us for more information on recycling plastic waste.*

4.5.38
You must **not** burn plastic waste.

4.5.39
If you use structures that require plastic covering, such as polytunnels, the plastic covering must be based on polyethylene, polypropylene or other polycarbonates.

### Managing water biodiversity

4.5.40
We will introduce these water management standards in three steps over the following timescale, reviewing each step before moving onto the next:

- **Step 1:** As guidelines (not obligatory) from 1 January 2008 to 31 December 2009
- **Step 2:** Implementing only what you must not do from 1 January 2010 to 31 December 2011
- **Step 3:** Implementing them as full standards from 1 January 2012.

4.5.41
You should use information from conservation agencies and biodiversity action plans to: ▶
- where relevant, be aware of key freshwater species on your farm or in your locality, and
- if present, incorporate the requirements of such species into your whole farm conservation planning.

**4.5.42**

You should (and from 2012 you must) have an undisturbed buffer strip of at least 2 metres along any watercourses or reservoirs to protect wildlife and prevent soil erosion. We may give exceptions to this where you can justify that it is essential and/or the risk of damage is low. Our decision will depend on the dimensions of the watercourse, the topography, the cropping and other management practices.

Note – the buffer strip can be natural or productive vegetation, provided it performs the protective function.

**4.5.43**

You should (and from 2012 you must), where applicable:

- identify wetlands, watercourses, open water and springs on your farm on the conservation map, and
- protect these from contamination by, where relevant:
  1. stock
  2. excess manuring
  3. excess silting from soil erosion, and
  4. fuels and agro-chemicals.

Note – you may have waterings (areas next to watercourses to enable livestock to drink) provided you manage these to prevent or at least limit any damage caused.

**4.5.44**

You may create and manage man-made water courses and water bodies, provided you:

- take account of existing biodiversity, and
- ensure you conserve and develop the surrounding natural habitats.

**4.5.45**

You should not (and from 1 January 2010 you must not) physically alter any:

- natural watercourse or water body
- bank-side habitat, wetland, mire or reedbed.
We may give you permission to do this if we have agreed this as part of your conservation plan or for another appropriate reason. You may also need permission from the appropriate authorities.

Note – an example of ‘another appropriate reason’ could be installing a local-scale energy generating system or improving a reservoir.

**Controlling water pollution**

4.5.46

Organic farming should aim to reduce, even eliminate, water pollutants entering the water catchment.

4.5.47

You should (and from 2012 you must):

- assess pollution risks arising out of your farm's:
  - manure and fertiliser use
  - livestock management
  - cultivation practices
  - dirty water practices, and
  - domestic and processing waste, and

- identify and be ready to implement remedial measures for each of them.

4.5.48

You should:

- have measures to separate water polluted by wastes, manures, silage and compost leachate
- use bio-filters in dirty water, manure and water management systems
- drain your milk tanker loading sites into the dirty water system
- regularly monitor your soil, ground and surface water for contamination where you use irrigation or potential pollutants that we allow.

Note – the contaminants you should monitor will depend on the likely sources of pollution. They are most likely to be pathogens, agro-chemicals and certain nutrients.

4.5.49

You should not (and from 1 January 2010 you must not) do anything to pollute or degrade water resources.
Note – we accept that some activities aimed at long-term positive benefit may cause minimal, short-term damage as a side-effect.

4.5.50

You should not (and from 1 January 2010 you must not) apply to land any processing waste from abattoirs or meat processing units unless it is properly treated and is of organic farming origin.

Note – you may also have to comply with other regulations (e.g. the Animal By-products Regulations 2005).

4.6 Managing soil

4.6.1

You should maintain a protective cover of vegetation, such as green manure or growing crops, to protect surface-living organisms and soil structure from exposure to dry conditions, heavy rain or strong winds.

4.6.2

Your cultivation for crop production should:

• be well-timed to get a suitable tilth whilst avoiding damage to the soil structure
• cause minimal disruption of the soil profile by shallow ploughing or no-till systems, and
• enable deep loosening of the sub-soil to break plough or compaction pans.

4.6.3

You should monitor the levels of organic matter, available plant nutrients and nutrient reserves in your soil by analysing them and nutrient budgeting. You should try to do this at the same time each year.

4.6.4

You must manage your soil to prevent erosion.

4.6.5

You must manage your soil with the aim of developing and protecting an optimum soil structure, biological activity and fertility. To do this you must:

• maintain humus levels, biological activity and plant nutrients, for example by regularly applying organic manure or compost and plant remains
• make sure your soil has enough microbial activity to start the decay of organic materials
• make sure your soil has enough microbial activity to break down non-soluble minerals to make them available to plant roots, and
• make sure your soil conditions encourage the continual activity of soil fauna and other soil stabilising agents. They will improve and stabilise soil structure by producing granular casts, deep burrows and mixing the organic matter.

4.6.6 | Revised

With our approval, you may use appropriate preparations of micro-organisms to improve soil condition or nutrient availability. You must obtain our approval before you use them, and tell us why you need to use them.

4.7 | Manure, compost and plant wastes

4.7.1

To optimise nutrient cycles and prevent nutrient loss, you must return manure and plant wastes to the soil. You should return enough to increase or at least maintain soil fertility and microbial activity. Together with a sound rotation, this should form the basis of soil fertility management.

4.7.2

Your management of soil fertility should minimise nutrient loss and you should:

• compost manure and aerate slurry
• only use non-synthetic mineral and biological fertilisers as an addition to, and not a replacement for, nutrient recycling
• prevent heavy metals and other pollutants accumulating in the soil, and
• maintain suitable pH levels in the soil.

4.7.3

You may use:

• organically produced straw, farmyard manure (FYM) and poultry manure, preferably after composting it properly
• organically produced slurry, urine and dirty water, preferably after aerating
• plant waste materials and by-products from organic food processing, preferably after treating, and
• sawdust, shavings and bark from untreated timber.
4.7.4
You may only use peat in propagating media, but you should use alternatives to peat where possible. Ideally these should be from sustainable UK produced materials.

4.7.5 | Revised
With justification you may use:
- compost activators made from microbial and plant extracts, and
- biodynamic preparations.

4.7.6
You must only use non-organic manure and plant wastes to complement your soil fertility management. You must use them only occasionally and when other ways of maintaining soil health and fertility are insufficient.

4.7.7 | Revised
With justification, you may use non-organic animal manure or plant waste. However, you must:
- give us details of the manure, including the animal species and the husbandry system it comes from
- send us a completed GMO Declaration for brought in FYM (available from us on request)
- tell us why you need to use it, and
- make sure the manure or plant waste has been stacked or composted for the required time (see standard 4.7.19).

4.7.8
The following non-organic manure, plant wastes and by-products are acceptable to use subject to standard 4.7.7:
- straw, FYM and stable manure
- poultry manure and deep litter from the following egg producing systems (defined by EEC Regulation No. 1274/91):
  i. free range – maximum 1,000 birds/ha
  ii. semi-intensive – maximum 4,000 birds/ha
  iii. deep litter – maximum seven birds/m²
  iv. deep litter pullet rearing systems – maximum housing density 17kg birds/m²
- poultry manure and deep litter from the following meat producing systems (defined by EEC Regulation No. 1538/91):
  i. free range
ii. traditional free range
iii. extensive indoor barn reared (maximum housing density of 12 mature birds or 25kg/m²)

- manure from straw-based pig production systems
- by-products from food processing industries
- plant wastes and by-products, including green wastes
- mushroom composts, worm composts and animal slurry made from non-organic animal manure conforming to these standards
- dirty water from non-organic systems, but only applied to in-conversion land
- feather meal from the non-organic systems identified in this standard.

4.7.9 | Revised

With our approval you may use compost from household waste if it meets all legal requirements and if it is free from GMOs. We will review the waste recycling process to evaluate the risk of GMO contamination.

We do not consider greenwaste compost from source separated systems containing no food or animal by-products as household waste.

Note – www.defra.gov.uk/environment/waste/topics/compost/index.htm has more information on the legal requirements.

4.7.10 | Revised

If you wish to use a compost which we have not licensed or approved you will need to provide us with a heavy metal analysis of the material. Compost from household waste must contain concentrations of no more than (in mg/kg of dry matter):

- Cadmium: 0.7
- Copper: 70
- Nickel: 25
- Lead: 45
- Zinc: 200
- Mercury: 0.4
- Chromium (VI): 0.

Compost from source separated greenwaste facilities must contain concentrations of no more than (in mg/kg of dry matter):

- Cadmium: 1.5
- Copper: 200
- Nickel: 50
- Lead: 200
- Zinc: 400
- Mercury: 1
- Chromium (VI): 100.
4.7.11

If you produce compost for sale to organic farmers your composting facilities and methods must meet the requirements of the Publicly Available Specification for Composted Materials (PAS100). You must meet the PAS100 in addition to the requirements of these standards.

Note – PAS100 specifies the minimum requirements for the process of composting, the selection of input materials and the quality of the composted materials, but does not include requirements for organic production. If you need a copy of the PAS100 please contact The Composting Association, WRAP or our food and farming department.

4.7.12

You must **not** use:

- sewage sludge, effluents and sludge-based composts, or
- animal residues and manure from livestock systems that do not meet these standards, including:
  1. battery poultry systems
  2. broiler units with stocking rates over 25kg/m²
  3. indoor tethered sow breeding units
  4. other systems where the animals are not freely allowed to turn through 360°, where they are permanently in the dark, or are permanently kept without bedding.

Note – please refer to standard 4.8.12 for processed animal products and fish products you can use in protected cropping, propagation composts and perennial crops.

### Managing compost, manure and slurry

4.7.13

The quality and effectiveness of manure and slurry improves after treatments such as composting, anaerobic digestion, aeration of slurry and storage.

4.7.14

Well managed compost heaps and anaerobic digesters will reduce the number of pathogens, destroy most weed seeds, chemical residues and antibiotics that may be present in the animal or plant wastes. Composting will also stabilise nutrients, reduce nutrient losses in the soil and help to meet the needs of a crop through the growing season.
4.7.15
You should:

• store and compost manure and plant waste indoors, under plastic sheeting or on hard standing where you can collect run-off (to prevent losing nutrients during periods of heavy rainfall)
• monitor the temperature throughout the composting process
• build slurry tanks and slurry lagoons to British Standard 5502: 1989, and install aeration facilities
• analyse compost to make sure human pathogens have been removed – we suggest you:
  i. use a HACCP based approach
  ii. record three continuous days’ temperatures at over 55°C for each batch
  iii. sample the first three batches for Salmonella and E. coli, and
  iv. make further analyses if you change the manure waste source

• apply only properly composted materials, and
• only apply composted manure, plant waste and aerated slurry in spring and summer, and onto grassland, cultivated land and land you plan to use for fertility building crops.

4.7.16
You should keep compost heaps made from organic manure or plant waste for at least three months and turn them frequently to achieve an even temperature of at least 55°C.

4.7.17
Treatments you should use for organic manure and plant waste:

• treatment for slurry: aerated
• treatment for manure and plant waste, including straw:
  i. stacked for three months
  ii. stacked for two months and turned at least twice, or
  iii. properly composted.

Note – please refer to standard 4.7.19 for how you must treat non-organic manure and plant waste.

4.7.18
You should produce a farm waste management plan which details how you will manage manure and crop residues to:

• recycle nutrients, and
• minimise nutrient losses.
Note – you can get a guide that will help you produce a farm waste management plan from Defra (*Farm Waste Management Plan – The Defra step by step guide for farmers*).

### 4.7.19

You must treat your non-organic manure and plant waste as follows:

- treatment for slurry: aerated
- treatment for pig and poultry manure from systems described in standard 4.7.8:
  - i. stacked for 12 months
  - ii. stacked for six months and turned at least twice, or
  - iii. properly composted
- treatment for other livestock manure and plant waste, including straw and by-products from non-organic food processing:
  - i. stacked for six months
  - ii. stacked for three months and turned at least twice, or
  - iii. properly composted.

### 4.7.20 | Revised

With our approval, you may use material resulting from the anaerobic fermentation for biogas production of non-organic plant waste, including straw and by-products from non-organic food processing.

Note – you must only use this material to complement your soil fertility management. Please see standard 4.7.6.

### 4.7.21

Manure treatments, storage systems and applications must conform to the Water Resources Act 1991 and the *Defra Code of Good Agricultural Practice for the Protection of Water*. You can get free copies of these from Defra Publications or the Environment Agency.

### 4.7.22

Your storage facilities must be:

- able to cope with the amount of manure and slurry that is produced on your holding
- large enough to stop pollution of watercourses and ground water through direct flow, or by run-off and penetration of the soil, and
- large enough to store manure throughout the times of the year you are not able or allowed to apply it to the land. This might be when the weather or land is not suitable or if your production unit is in a nitrate vulnerable zone.
Note – we consider that to meet the above standards you should have at least four months’ storage capacity for livestock manure and slurry. This should be in place before your land becomes organic.

**How much compost, manure and slurry you can apply**

### 4.7.23
You should spread organic manure on your own organic land.

### 4.7.24
The total amount of manure that you can apply to your organic or in-conversion land, averaged over the whole area, must not be more than 170kg of nitrogen (N) per hectare per year.

You must calculate it over the whole area of your holding or linked units you use for agriculture. It is not the maximum you can apply to any one field.

### 4.7.25
You must not apply more than 250kg of nitrogen per hectare per year to any area of land. This excludes any manure your livestock deposit directly. This does not apply to protected cropping.

### 4.7.26
You should take note of the following when calculating the amount of nitrogen:

- Directive 91/676/EEC defines manure as animal urine, faeces and any bedding (but the nitrogen in bedding is negligible).
- The 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year includes the amount of nitrogen applied to your land by your livestock plus any brought-in dried or pelleted manure.
- The 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year excludes other fertilisers, leguminous crops and other supplementary nutrients.

### 4.7.27 | Revised
To help you with your calculations you can use the table below. This shows you how much nitrogen is produced by livestock in a year.

**Annual amount (kg) of nitrogen (N) produced per animal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dairy cattle</th>
<th>Beef cattle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dairy cows (600kg)</td>
<td>Suckler cows (500kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy cows (500kg)</td>
<td>Stock bulls</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You may calculate the nitrogen content of manure and slurry from the average figures below.

### Amount (kg) of nitrogen (per tonne, fresh weight)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solid manure</th>
<th>Slurry/liquid (per 1000l)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cattle and sheep FYM</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pig FYM</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layer FYM</td>
<td>16.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broiler/turkey FYM</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duck FYM</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pig</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dirty water</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note – please also refer to standard 6.1.8 for details of manure usage on grassland of high environmental value.

### 4.7.29
If necessary, you must reduce the total stocking density to prevent exceeding 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year.
4.7.30
We may apply further limits to your application rate of manure in order to reduce the risk of contamination of watercourses, particularly in high-risk areas.

4.7.31
You may establish links with other organic holdings to spread surplus organic manure. You must not spread it onto non-organic land. You must explain in your conversion plan how you will keep to this standard.

4.7.32
You must have an on-going arrangement with any linked units (more than just a one-off transaction). The ideal would be an arrangement where you exchange manure for straw or feed.

4.7.33
When you spread manure or slurry you must:
• avoid run-off and the pollution of ground water, and
• pay attention to the capacity of the ground to absorb the manure and slurry at that time.

4.7.34
You must only apply manure to grassland when nutrient uptake is actively taking place.

4.7.35
If you have to spread slurry onto grassland over winter you must only apply it when conditions are suitable.

4.7.36
You may only spread manure on frozen or saturated ground with our permission. You must provide us with full justification.

4.7.37
You may apply composted manure at any time in protected cropping.

4.7.38
You must not:
• apply manure or slurry when conditions are unfavourable and pollution is likely to occur
• spread slurry or manure on soil that has been frozen hard for 12 hours or more
• spread manure within ten metres of ditches or watercourses or within 50m of boreholes
• store or compost manure, without run-off collection facilities, within 50m of rivers or waterways or 100m from boreholes, or
• spread manure directly onto horticultural crops during the growing season unless it has been properly composted or stacked as required in standard 4.7.17 and 4.7.19 (excluding potatoes).

4.7.39
You should leave the following time periods between application of manure and harvesting of horticultural crops.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Harvest interval for horticultural crops (excluding potatoes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Material</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slurry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresh manure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stacked manure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manure stacked and turned at least twice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composted manure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note – please refer to standards 4.7.17 and 4.7.19 for the required treatment times for manure and plant waste.

4.8 | **Mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients**

4.8.1
You should only use mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients to supplement and not replace methods of nutrient recycling described in sections 4.6, 4.7 and 5.1.

4.8.2
You must plan your production system to minimise the need for brought-in nutrients.

4.8.3 | **Revised**

With justification, you may use the phosphate (P) sources listed below:
• natural rock phosphate, such as Tunisian rock phosphate
• calcined aluminium phosphate rock, such as Redzlaag, but only where the soil pH is greater than 7.5.

The cadmium content of rock phosphate is a potential problem. The cadmium content of the above materials must be no more than 90mg per kilogram of phosphate. You should use it as little as possible to avoid contaminating your organic land.

4.8.4 | Revised

With justification, you may use the potassium (K) (potash) sources listed below:

• wood ash, only when added to composts and manure
• plant extracts, such as Kali Vinasse
• natural rock potash, if it has a relatively low immediate solubility in water and low chlorine content, such as Adularian rock potash, and
• sylvinitite and kainite (natural potash sources).

4.8.5 | Revised

With justification, you may use the seaweed sources listed below:

• dried seaweed meal
• liquid seaweed, free from ingredients we don’t allow
• washed up seaweed collected from the seashore by you for use on your land, and
• calcified seaweed, collected from the seashore by you for use on your land.

4.8.6

You must not use calcified seaweed extracted by dredging.

4.8.7 | Revised

With justification, you may use liquid feeds made from plants produced on your organic unit.

4.8.8 | Revised

With justification, you may use the minor minerals listed below:

• calcareous magnesium rock, such as Dolomitic limestone, for magnesium and lime
• gypsum (calcium sulphate)
• ground chalk and limestone
• Epsom salts, for acute magnesium deficiency
• magnesium rock, including Kieserite
• clays, such as perlite and vermiculite.
4.8.9 | Revised

With justification, you may use stone meal, such as ground basalt.

4.8.10 | Revised

With our approval, you may use sulphate of potash, which can contain magnesium salt, to treat severe deficiencies.

As sulphate of potash is highly soluble we will allow you to use it only on soils susceptible to low potassium levels. These are generally the low-clay soils, especially kaolinite clay, which have a lower cation exchange capacity. Your soil analysis must show a clay content less than 20%. Your soil analysis must show exchangeable K levels below index 2 (which is equal to 121mg/litre extractable K using the ammonium nitrate method).

We can give you approval either on a case-by-case basis, or through a plan, provided we have details of why you need to use it and under what circumstances. You must have a full soil analysis carried out, including clay fractions, heavy metal content and trace element levels. This must be available when we request it and at your inspection.

4.8.11 | Revised

With our approval, you may use the supplementary nutrients listed below to treat severe deficiencies:

- sulphur
- the trace elements boron, copper, iron, manganese, molybdenum, cobalt, selenium, zinc, sodium (in the form of granular rock salt)
- basic slag
- meat, blood, bone, hoof and horn meals, but only in propagating compost and not on units where there are cattle or sheep
- wool shoddy, only when not in direct contact with the crop
- fish meals and fish emulsions, provided they are free from substances we don’t allow and only in protected cropping, propagating composts or for perennial crops
- calcium chloride, only for bitter pit in apples
- industrial lime from sugar production.

We can give you approval either on a case-by-case basis, or through a plan, provided we have details of why you need to use it and under what circumstances. You must have a full soil analysis carried out, including clay fractions, heavy metal content and trace element levels. This must be available when we request it and at your inspection.
4.8.12 | Revised

With our approval, you may use commercial fertilisers and liquid feeds suitable for organic use to treat severe deficiencies. You will need to tell us the ingredients and the nutrient analysis before we can approve them.

Note – you will not need to provide us with details of the ingredients if we have already verified or certified it. We can give you approval either on a case-by-case basis or through a plan, provided we have details of why you need to use it and under what circumstances.

4.8.13 | New

You may use calcium carbonate (CaCO₃).

4.8.14 | Revised

You must not use any other fertilisers, including:

- fresh blood
- guano
- chilean nitrate
- urea
- slaked lime and hydrated lime (calcium hydroxide CaO + H₂O)
- quicklime and burnt lime (calcium oxide CaO).

4.8.15

You must not use plant growth regulators.

4.9 Heavy metals in soil and manure

4.9.1

Heavy metals and other metallic elements are naturally present in the soil and some are essential, in trace amounts, to plants and animals. You need to maintain a correct balance. Applying manure, fertilisers and mineral supplements should not increase the concentration in the soil beyond acceptable levels.

4.9.2

The level of heavy metals in manure and soil must not exceed those in the table overleaf.
### Maximum levels of heavy metals in topsoil and manure on a total dry matter basis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>In soil (mg/kg)</th>
<th>In soil (kg/ha)</th>
<th>In manure (mg/kg)</th>
<th>In manure (kg/tonne)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>336</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>336</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nickel</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadmium</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arsenic</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note – we will expect you to test for these only if it is likely that these levels have been exceeded.

### 4.10 Controlling weeds

#### 4.10.1

The best way to control weeds is by carefully designing and managing your whole farm system. To control weeds it is important to use good rotation design, manure management, well-timed soil cultivation and good farm hygiene.

#### 4.10.2

You should use these methods for controlling weeds:

- balanced rotations which include weed-suppressing and weed-susceptible crops
- sowing green manures
- composting manure and plant waste, and aerating slurry
- pre-sowing cultivation and stale seed bed techniques
- selecting crop varieties for vigour and weed suppression
- using re-cleaned seed
- high seed rates and under-sowing, and
- hygiene in the field and with machinery.

#### 4.10.3

You may use the following methods if suitable:

- pre-germinating, propagating and transplanting
- raised beds and no-dig systems
• mulches, including plastic mulches but made only from polyethylene, polypropylene or other polycarbonates
• mixed stocking and tight grazing
• pre-emergence and post-emergence mechanical operations, such as hoeing, harrowing, topping, hand weeding, and
• pre-emergence and post-emergence flame weeding.

4.10.4

You must **not** use any agrochemical or hormone herbicide on any part of your organic or in-conversion holding, including:

• on your crops
• round the edges of fields
• within or below hedgerows
• on headlands and pathways.

4.10.5

You must **not** use steam or thermal pasteurisation or sterilisation of the soil for weed control.

Note – you may use flame weeding (see standard 4.10.3).

### 4.11 Controlling pests and disease

4.11.1

The best way to control pests and disease is by carefully designing and managing your whole farm system to achieve health, diversity and vitality in your soils and crops. You will then encourage natural growth and a balanced farm ecosystem.

4.11.2

You should use these methods for controlling pests and disease:

• creating fertile soils of high biological activity to provide crops with a balanced supply of nutrients
• encouraging natural predators within and around crops by:
  i. companion planting, under-sowing and mixed cropping, and
  ii. leaving hedges, windbreaks, wildlife corridors and field margins uncultivated
• choosing resistant crops and varieties that are suited to your farm conditions
• grafting onto resistant rootstock
• carefully planning planting dates, and
• using good husbandry and hygiene practices to limit the spread of any pests or disease.

4.11.3

You must ensure that any products you use for pest or disease control are approved for that specific use by the Pesticide Safety Directorate or other relevant body.

Note – you can get a factsheet from us listing the products available and how you can use them under the present pesticide regulations.

4.11.4

You may use the following products to control insect pests:

• physical barriers, including fleeces and insect netting but made only from polyethylene, polypropylene or other polycarbonates
• pheromones in traps and dispensers, for monitoring pest levels or as attractants and sexual behaviour disrupters
• quassia preparations from Quassia amara
• preparations of Bacillus thuringiensis
• sticky fly traps, free from insecticides we don’t allow
• biological pest control, but only using licensed, naturally occurring predators
• granulose virus preparations
• gelatine
• hydrolysed proteins, but only as an attractant in traps
• diammonium phosphate, but only as an attractant in traps
• quartz sand as a repellent.

4.11.5 | Revised

With our approval, you may use pyrethrum preparations (made from pyrethrins extracted from Chrysanthemum cinerariaefolium, which may contain a synergist). You must tell us how you will minimise damage to pollinators in your annual plan.

4.11.6

You may use the following products to control fungi:

• beeswax, but only after pruning
• lecithin, and
• licensed, naturally occurring biological control.
4.11.7
You may use rodenticides but only in tamper-proof bait stations and in places where there is no risk of contaminating products.

Note – rodenticides must be labelled properly and you must store them under lock and key away from food.

4.11.8
You may use the following products for general pest control:

- plant oils such as mint, pine or caraway, but only as insecticides, acaricides, fungicides or sprout inhibitors
- steam to sterilise buildings and equipment
- mechanical traps, barriers and sound, and
- oils free from materials we don’t allow.

4.11.9
You may use wetting and sticking agents used in sprays. These must be approved products based on natural plant extracts/oils free from materials we don’t allow.

4.11.10
You must not use petroleum oils, paraffin oils or other mineral oils as pesticides.

4.11.11 | Revised
With our approval of a detailed plan, you may use copper (Cu) products only if there is a major threat to your crops. You may only use up to 6kg Cu/ha/year and only the products listed below:

- copper sulphate
- copper hydroxide
- cuprous oxide
- copper oxychloride
- copper ammonium carbonate, at a maximum concentration of 25g/l
- copper octanoate.

Your plan must include details of why you need to use copper and under what circumstances. If we approve your plan you must submit an annual return with full details of the quantities you have used and the areas where you have used it.
4.11.12 | Revised

With our permission before every use, you may use rotenone (preparations made from *Derris spp*, *Lonchocarpus spp* and *Tephrosia spp*) only for treating gooseberry sawfly but you must:

- tell us why you need to use it, including details of pest numbers, and you should support this with a recommendation from a competent advisor
- take all the required safety precautions
- observe a harvest interval of seven days, and
- include it in your farm plan.

We will give you permission only as a treatment of last resort.

4.11.13 | Revised

With our approval, you may use the following products only if there is a major threat to your crops. We can give you approval either on a case-by-case basis or through a plan, provided we have details of why you need to use it and under what circumstances:

- Azadirachtin extracted from *Azadirachta indica* (neem tree)
- lime sulphur (calcium polysulphide)
- steam sterilisation or pasteurisation of soils, but only in protected structures
- fatty acid potassium soap (soft soap), and
- sulphur.

Note – we will give approval to use steam only as a one-off practice to combat a particular problem.

Note – we are monitoring the use of soft soap and sulphur.

4.11.14 | New

With our permission before every use, you may use Spinosad only if there is a major threat to your crops, but you must:

- tell us why you need to use it, including details of pest numbers, and
- include in your annual plan details of how you will minimise damage to pollinators and how you will minimise the risk of development of resistance.

We will give you permission only as a treatment of last resort.

4.11.15 | New

With our approval of a detailed plan, you may use potassium bicarbonate only as a substitute for copper or sulphur. You must be able to show why you need to use it and that it is an alternative to copper or sulphur.
4.11.16
You must **not** use pesticides or fungicides that we do not allow.

4.11.17
You must **not** use nicotine (*Nicotiana tabacum*) or extracts made from nicotine.

### 4.12 Harvesting crops

**4.12.1**
You must follow a written procedure to inspect the cleanliness of the machinery you use for drilling, spraying or combining. The level of detail in your procedure must depend on the level of risk.

**4.12.2**
You must have control and operating procedures that ensure organic produce is clearly identified from harvesting to despatch.

### 4.13 Storing crops

**4.13.1**
Your organic storage areas and containers must be:
- dedicated to organic or in-conversion crops
- clearly labelled to prevent mistakes between organic, in-conversion and non-organic crops
- separated from areas used for other purposes by an effective physical partition
- made from materials suitable for food use
- maintained in a clean and hygienic state
- covered to prevent contamination by bird droppings, and
- protected from access and contamination by vermin.

**4.13.2**
You must leave storage areas empty for a suitable length of time before use, to act as a disease and insect break.

**4.13.3**
You must **not** use:
- ionising radiation or synthetic chemicals as an aid to preservation
• materials we don’t allow (including sprout inhibitors, fungicidal sprays, dips or powders and chemical fumigants or pesticides) in stores or on premises where you store organic or in-conversion crops, or
• stores containing wood treated with organo-chlorine wood preservatives such as gamma HCH or lindane.

4.14 Transporting crops

4.14.1
When you are transporting organic or in-conversion crops to other units, including wholesalers and retailers, you must make sure they are in suitable packaging or containers. They must be closed to prevent substitution and labelled or accompanied by a document that shows:

• your company name and address, and owner if different
• the name and organic status of the product
• the certification code, and
• a traceability code.

4.14.2 | Revised
With justification, you may send produce to another licensed organic operator in open packaging or containers but you must send it with a document detailing the information in standard 4.14.1.

4.15 Cleaning equipment and storage areas

4.15.1
You may use the following cleaning methods:

• physical methods (for example sweeping)
• vacuum cleaning
• steam cleaning
• high pressure water cleaning, and
• hypochlorite, followed by rinsing with drinking water.

4.15.2
You must make sure all equipment is clean and free from non-organic crop residues, and any other materials that may contaminate your organic produce. This includes:

• harvesting equipment
• transport vehicles and containers
• drying equipment and conveyors, and
• storage areas.

4.15.3
Containers for storage or transport must be:
• of food grade quality
• in a good state of repair, and
• clean and free from visible residues or materials that may affect the organic integrity of products.

4.15.4
You must have a cleaning programme for any vehicles you use to transport organic products. You must make sure they are cleaned regularly and there is no build up of non-organic materials.

4.15.5
If you use vehicles or containers that have been used to transport non-organic goods or materials, you must make sure they are thoroughly clean before transporting organic products.

4.15.6
You may dry crops using direct-fired propane, diesel and paraffin driers. You must have a regular maintenance programme for the drier to ensure full fuel combustion and prevent contamination by combustion products.

4.15.7
You must tell us immediately of any contamination of organic products.

4.15.8
You must not store on your organic unit products that we do not allow in these standards.

4.16 Managing water

4.16.1
We will introduce these water management standards in three steps over the following timescale, reviewing each step before moving onto the next:

Step 1: As guidelines (not obligatory) from 1 January 2008 to 31 December 2009
Step 2: Implementing only what you must not do from 1 January 2010 to 31 December 2011
Step 3: Implementing them as full standards from 1 January 2012.

4.16.2

Organic farming operates as part of a natural system. Good environmental management helps foster a healthy and diverse ecosystem and enhances farm production. Whatever the type of farming system, water is an integral part.

Using water generally

4.16.3

In all operations where you use water, including irrigation, washing, processing and for livestock, you should:

• use water efficiently
• minimise any potential pollution to natural or man-made watercourses, and
• clean and re-use water where possible.

4.16.4

You should:

• assess your water use to ensure it is efficient
• routinely monitor your use of water to ensure you minimise wastage
• routinely monitor your fixtures and equipment that use or supply water to ensure they are working efficiently, and
• make sure you comply with relevant legislation on water and abstraction, pollution and waste.

Managing soil water and ground water

4.16.5

Through the regular addition of organic matter in the form of compost and manure, organic management increases soil water retention capacity.

4.16.6

Your organic management should aim to:

• conserve groundwater
• prevent soil degradation
• maintain optimum soil moisture levels, and
• maintain freedom from contaminants.
4.16.7
To improve soil moisture levels, retention and capacity and reduce moisture loss, you should:

- enhance soil organic matter, structural stability and biological activity
- apply appropriate inputs of compost, manure and other organic matter
- use mulches
- scarify the surface
- use cultivation techniques such as contour ploughing and non-inversion tillage (direct planting)
- avoid cultivating during soil or weather conditions that will result in excessive moisture loss, and
- assess the impact of crop rotations.

Note – compost is the most stable form of organic matter so is the best way to improve water retention in soils.

Managing surface water

4.16.8
Your organic management should aim to reduce excess field run-off and corresponding transport of suspended solids which contributes to:

- flooding
- soil degradation and erosion
- pollution, and
- damage to biodiversity.

Note – excess run-off from agriculture contributes to major flood discharges in rivers and streams. Associated soil erosion reduces downstream biodiversity and disrupts environmental function, for example by adding excess amounts of nutrient-rich silts. Organic management strives to reduce such impacts by adopting appropriate management techniques. These also benefit the farm system through improved soils, crop quality and biodiversity.

4.16.9
You should:

- seek to retain permanent vegetation on land prone to run-off and erosion
- store roof/yard waters that otherwise may contribute to:
  i. peak discharge flows in watercourses
  ii. erosion on prone soils
  iii. increasing quantities of dirty water (diluted slurry) on concreted areas
• apply the principles of sustainable urban drainage systems (SUDS), where appropriate.

Note – SUDS is becoming a well established tool in water management. It aims to control the sources of water, reduce run-off and increase retention and percolation.

4.16.10

You should (and from 2012 you must):

• identify areas prone to run-off and soil erosion, and
• adopt appropriate strategies to minimise these.

Note – strategies might include selecting suitable stock type and levels, under-sowing, inter-cropping systems, non-inversion and contour cultivation, herbage strips and over-winter green covers.

4.16.11

With our permission, you may construct new field drainage.

Note – we would generally not give permission where the development is inappropriate (for example in wetland habitats), or where there is a risk of flooding or erosion downstream, unless there are associated mitigating practices. We may require you to provide validation of these factors from an appropriate environmental body.

4.16.12

You should not (and from 1 January 2010 you must not) expose bare soil in situations where there is a high risk of run-off and soil erosion.

Note – ‘high risk’ situations may be due to climate or topography, length of exposure or crops involved. In such situations you should employ management practices to reduce the risk (for example contour tillage, leaving strips uncultivated along the contour, using appropriate cover crops, etc).

Storage and abstraction

4.16.13

Responsible organic management implies operating sustainably within the natural hydrology of your water catchment area and drainage basin. This means you should design your systems to:

• use only as much water as the catchment can sustain, and
• have the least impact on water quality and flow downstream of you.
4.16.14

If you abstract water or irrigate, you should (and from 2012 you must) draw up and implement a water management plan to minimise your impact on the local water resources. When you draw up your plan it must:

• detail your uses of water
• identify issues in all the sub-headings below that are relevant to your operation and its location
• address in particular any high impact issues relevant to your operation, such as:
  i. irrigation and other significant demands for water
  ii. soil erosion, and
  iii. possible pollution from agro-chemical use and storing and from spreading animal manure
• take account of (particularly if you irrigate, but may still be relevant regarding, for example soil erosion):
  i. crop suitability and soil type
  ii. water availability and topography, and
  iii. peak demands and, where relevant, effects downstream, and
• detail the water conservation techniques and management practices you will use to reduce or avoid impact.

Note – your plan should be proportional to how much water you use and its impact. The lower the impact, the simpler your plan can be. It need not cover aspects that are not relevant to your operation.

To draw up the plan, you must:

• use information from appropriate authorities and agencies where available (including, for example, those responsible for water use, the environment, and flood management strategies), and
• identify any local drainage basin management issues.

4.16.15

To draw up the plan, you should:

• consult appropriate advisory bodies, and
• be aware of relevant literature on water use.

4.16.16

Your plan should also address:

• using as little water as possible
• any water treatments you might use, and
• storing and recycling water.
4.16.17
When you consider altering enterprises, such as new cropping or stocking, you should (and from 2012 you must) consider:

• suitability of the soil, land use and topography, and
• the impacts of such changes upon the drainage basin.

4.16.18
Abstraction will inevitably result in reduction of water flow or levels in rivers or aquifers. If you store and/or abstract water, you should:

• aim to minimise the impact on natural water resources and on biodiversity
• consider these impacts on the area of abstraction which may be a great distance away, sometimes from another river basin, and
• store surface and roof water during periods of heavy rainfall, particularly in areas where there are seasonal deficits.

4.16.19
Where water is scarce, you should use it only for high value outputs/end uses.

4.16.20
You may use abstracted water, provided that you or an appropriate authority:

• monitors water source levels, considering also precipitation, drainage rates and timeliness of supply (you may use locally appropriate methods of monitoring)
• ensures your abstraction and storage has an insignificant impact upon the catchment (it must not irreversibly damage or deplete water resources), and
• are able to demonstrate this through measuring the effect of abstraction on available reserves.


4.16.21
If you abstract water, you should (and from 2012 you must):

• use it efficiently
• maintain the quality of returned water, and
• also have systems for rainwater capture, storage and use.
**Re-use**

### 4.16.22
You should (and from 2012 you must) re-use water, including reclaimed water:
- where you have high water use and there is low availability
- if it is practical to do so
- if water quality parameters permit, and
- provided it does not impact upon natural water cycles and/or the river ecosystem.

### 4.16.23
You should use dirty water separation systems to:
- minimise the amount of dirty water you have to dispose of
- maximise the amount of reusable clean water
- dispose of the dirty water without causing pollution of natural water cycles, and
- re-use the clean water.

**Irrigation**

### 4.16.24
To reduce the need for irrigation and its impact on natural water cycles and reserves, you should:
- select appropriate crops, varieties and growing systems
- employ efficient irrigation techniques, and
- use scheduling information to plan your irrigation efficiently.

### 4.16.25
If you irrigate, you should:
- use methods, such as trickle and boom systems, that distribute water evenly and efficiently to the crop
- water crops in the evening or early morning to minimise evaporation losses, and
- base your scheduling on direct soil moisture measurements (being the most accurate system).

### 4.16.26
If you irrigate you should (and from 2012 you must): ▶
• monitor soil water content on a regular basis to assist with irrigation scheduling
• base your scheduling on the soil moisture deficit
• measure soil moisture deficit either by direct soil moisture measurement or by estimation
• keep records of the water you use and your scheduling and have these available to show relevant authorities
• take regular meter readings if you use mains water, to quickly identify anomalies such as leaks
• monitor water quality annually if you source from open water, and
• monitor water quality before introducing a new irrigation system.

Note – the quality parameters you should monitor will depend on the source of the water. They are most likely to be pathogens, agro-chemicals and certain nutrients.

Note – if you are part of a rotational, public irrigation scheme, over which you have no control, then we may exempt you from some of these requirements.

4.16.27
You may use spray irrigation provided that:
• the water application is uniform, and
• you minimise evaporation and soil erosion.

4.16.28
You should not (and from 1 January 2010 you must not) irrigate:
• when soil is at field capacity, or
• in a way that causes salination to the detriment of future cropping.
Arable and horticultural crop rotations
5.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management

**Arable and horticultural crop rotations**

5.1 Additional standards for arable and horticultural crop rotations
5.2 Using seed and propagation material
### 5.1 Additional standards for arable and horticultural crop rotations

#### 5.1.1
Arable land provides important habitats for a range of fauna and flora. With careful management you can enhance these habitats and your arable cropping.

#### 5.1.2
If you have more than 30 hectares of arable land and your soils are suitable, you should cultivate and sow at least 10% after 1 February. In the previous autumn, you should either leave this land as stubble or establish and leave a green manure crop in place.

#### 5.1.3
You should manage all spring sown crops sensitively between April and July to limit the impact of tractor based operations on wildlife, especially ground nesting birds. This includes soil cultivation and mechanical weeding. You should not mow green manures lower than 10cm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crop rotation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### 5.1.4
Using a well-designed crop rotation is central to your organic production system.

#### 5.1.5
By using a balanced rotation you will:
- help build fertility using grass and clover leys, green manures and appropriate applications of manure
- vary the demands on the soil
- provide the nutritional needs of the crops
- limit the spread of diseases
- help prevent weed problems
- break the lifecycles of pests, and
- keep nutrient loss to a minimum.

#### 5.1.6
You should include a balance of cropping and grass and clover leys in your rotation. ▶
Note – as each field is different we cannot recommend any one rotation but two examples of balanced rotations are:

- two years grass and clover ley, followed by: potatoes, legumes, brassicas, green manure, roots and salads, and
- three years grass and clover ley, followed by: winter wheat, winter barley, green manure and spring oats.

5.1.7

You should include in your rotation a mixture of:

- deep and shallow rooting crops
- high and low root mass crops
- weed-suppressing and weed susceptible crops, and
- nitrogen-demanding and nitrogen fixing crops.

5.1.8

You should:

- minimise the time that the soil is left uncovered, for example by using green manures
- maintain or increase the organic matter levels in the soil, and
- allow the longest period possible between growing crops of the same family on the same piece of land (this is an effective control for soil borne diseases such as potato cyst nematodes, onion white rot and club root in brassicas).

5.1.9

For perennial crops where a rotation is not possible you should create and maintain diverse ecosystems by:

- companion planting, under-sowing and mixed cropping, and
- leaving uncultivated field margins, hedges, wind breaks and wildlife corridors.

5.1.10

Where rotation is possible, the annual rotation you use for each area of land must:

- balance the use of fertility building and fertility depleting crops
- include crops with various root systems
- include a legume crop (for example clover or beans), and
- leave enough time between crops with similar pests and disease risks.

5.1.11

You must allow at least three seasons between returning the following outdoor crops to the same piece of land:
• alliums
• brassicas, and
• potatoes.

Note – you may grow successional crops of the same family in the same year.

5.1.12 | Revised

With our approval, you may grow two crops of the same family in following seasons if there is a gap of six seasons before cropping with that family again.

5.1.13

If your rotation does not meet the requirements of standard 5.1.10 above and relies on brought-in inputs for crop production, you must:

• show us you are moving towards a better balance between fertility building and fertility depleting management
• reduce your reliance on brought-in inputs, and
• make maximum use of legumes and green manures.

Cropping without rotations

5.1.14

When you cannot produce crops within a rotation your methods of nutrient supply, weed, pest and disease control must still comply with sections 4.6–4.11. Below are the main examples of such production systems:

• protected cropping (this includes mono-cropping or annual cropping of the same genus, though not alliums, potatoes or brassicas)
• permanent pastures, including upland habitats
• perennial crops such as orchards, vineyards and plantation crops, and
• wild harvested plants growing naturally in uncultivated areas (please see chapter 9).

5.1.15

You must not use:

• any cropping system we have not defined in standard 5.1.14 that relies on outside inputs for nutrient supply, weed, pest and disease control, or
• continuous arable rotations.
5.2 Using seed and propagation material

5.2.1 Where appropriate you should use bare root transplants raised on your own organic unit.

5.2.2 You must use organic seeds and plant material when a suitable variety is available. This includes potato tubers, onion sets, strawberry runners, fruit tree root stock and bud material.

5.2.3 With our permission, you may use non-organic seed and plant material when there are no suitable organic varieties available. You must send us a completed seed derogation form before we can give you permission.

Note – seed derogation forms are available from us on request. You can also submit them on-line, and find details of available organic varieties, at www.organicxseeds.co.uk and you can find details of variety performance on www.cosi.org.uk

5.2.4 You must **not** use seed treated with anything that is not allowed under section 4.11.

5.2.5 To produce organic seeds you must grow the mother plant to organic standards for at least one generation, or for perennial plants, two growing seasons.

5.2.6 To produce organic propagating material you must grow the mother plant to organic standards for at least one generation or, in the case of perennial plants, two growing seasons.

5.2.7 If you use transplants (bare root, blocks, modules) they must have been grown to organic standards by a registered organic producer.

5.2.8 You must use organic propagating material (sets, root stock and bud material) when available.
5.2.9
With our permission, you may use non-organic propagating material (not including transplants) when organic material is not available.

5.2.10
In propagating substrates you may use:
- clay, including bentonite and zeolites, and
- vermiculite and perlite.

These must not have been treated with materials we do not allow.

Growing transplants

5.2.11
To produce transplants for use in organic growing, you may only use substrates made from materials in section 4.7 and supplementary nutrients in section 4.8.

5.2.12
You may describe these transplants as, for example, ‘plants suitable for organic growing’ or ‘transplants suitable for organic production’.

5.2.13
You must have all labels and marketing literature approved by us before you use them.

5.2.14
You must not describe transplants as organic.

Growing plants in pots and containers to sell as organic

5.2.15
The only plants that you can grow in pots or other containers are ornamentals or herbs (including salad cress). You may sell them as organic only if:
- the substrate is made of at least 51% (by fresh weight of the end product) of materials from organic farming origin.
• no more than 49% of the substrate is made up of non-organic materials listed in standards 4.7.8 and 4.7.9, which you must treat according to standard 4.7.19
• the substrate provides more than 50% of their nutrient needs, until the point of sale
• you make sure the substrate is biologically active, for example by including composted material
• you meet all other relevant standards
• the entire plant and the pot are sold together
• you do not use peat or slaughterhouse wastes, and
• you do not use soil from organic farms.

5.2.16

You must **not** harvest parts of herbs or ornamentals that have been grown in pots and sell them as organic.
Grassland and forage
6.0
Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management

Grassland and forage

6.1 Additional standards for grassland and forage
6.2 Conserving forage
6.1 | Additional standards for grassland and forage

6.1.1
Clover and herb-rich leys are very important to most organic farms. They provide a fertility building phase in the rotation and high quality grazing and forage for livestock. They also help to break weed, pest and disease cycles.

6.1.2
You should use pastures to build soil fertility on your farm and also to control intestinal worms by rotational and clean grazing systems, forage conservation and mixed stocking.

6.1.3
You should:
• regularly analyse the soil of hay and silage fields to monitor fertility
• manage unimproved grassland and species-rich meadows to maintain their conservation value (see standards 6.1.5–6.1.8), and
• manage the grazing of leys to maintain or improve grassland habitats and avoid soil erosion.

6.1.4
Permanent pastures and uncropped areas are important wildlife habitats. Permanent pastures contribute to the health and diversity of the farm, building up fertility, protecting vulnerable soils and providing high quality grazing and forage for livestock. If your organic unit is over five hectares, you should manage a minimum of five per cent of the total field area as permanent pasture or uncropped habitat (such as field margins, hedges and beetle banks).

Species-rich meadows, unimproved and riparian grassland

6.1.5
Species-rich meadows, unimproved and riparian grassland are declining and need protection. They are an important habitat for many plants and invertebrates and enhance the landscape. They can also make a useful contribution to livestock nutrition due to the diversity of plant species and high mineral and trace element content.
6.1.6
You should manage ‘recognised’ species-rich meadows according to their species composition. You should have a plan that you agree with us or with the body that monitors the site (see standard 4.5.4). This should include:

- using traditional management practices
- using traditional grazing and cutting regimes
- timing mowing operations to allow grasses and flowers to set seed, and
- timing mowing and other mechanical operations to avoid disturbing ground-nesting birds, or to allow young birds to escape.

6.1.7
You should use native grass and wild flower seeds, using local genotypes obtained from recognised local suppliers. You should not use imported seeds that may have very different characteristics. Please also refer to section 5.2 about the use of organic seed.

6.1.8
If you spread manure and fertiliser on species-rich meadows, unimproved grassland and meadows and pastures on ‘recognised sites’ it should be no more than:

- the equivalent of 24kg of nitrogen/ha/yr (about 16 tonnes of cattle manure)
- the equivalent of 120kg nitrogen/ha every three years (about 20 tonnes of cattle manure), or
- levels required by the appropriate authority.

6.1.9
Your waterside management should protect the habitat and maintain aquatic diversity.

6.1.10
You must not:

- plough unimproved grassland or species-rich meadows that are recognised sites
- level ridge and furrow fields, or
- cultivate fields containing ancient monuments.
6.2 Conserving forage

6.2.1
You must follow the Control of Pollution (Silage, Slurry and Agricultural Fuel Oil) Regulations 1996 when making and storing silage. You can find the requirements for this in the Defra Water Code which is available free from Defra.

6.2.2
Effluent from silage clamps, bags and big bales must not pollute water courses or groundwater. You must ensure that effluent collection tanks:

- have enough storage for unusually wet silage, and
- prevent water entering which may cause an overflow.

6.2.3
Silage sheets and wrappings must be made only from polyethylene, polypropylene or other polycarbonates.

6.2.4
For preserving forage you may use:

- bacteria
- molasses, and
- enzymes, but only with suitable bacteria and only in wet seasons when you cannot make good silage by any other means.

6.2.5 Revised
To preserve moist grains and pulses (including crimping), you may use:

- E236 formic acid
- E270 lactic acid
- E280 propionic acid
- E260 acetic acid
- E200 sorbic acid, and
- E330 citric acid.

6.2.6 Revised
With justification, you may use the following silage additives, but only when weather conditions prevent adequate fermentation and alternative enzyme or bacterial additives would not be effective:

- E236 formic acid
- E270 lactic acid
• E280 propionic acid, and
• E260 acetic acid.

6.2.7
You must not use silage additives that contain GMOs or their derivatives.

6.2.8 | Revised
With justification, you may only sell more than quarter of your annual forage production per year if:
• you can show, through soil analysis, that you are maintaining soil fertility
• you have species-rich meadows that need low soil fertility, or
• you are in an agri-environment scheme which requires you to make hay annually on certain fields and this is more than you need for your stock.
Mushroom production
7.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management

**Mushroom production**

7.1  Additional standards for mushroom production
7.1 Additional standards for mushroom production

7.1.1
Organic mushroom production helps to recycle manure and plant wastes from and to organic farms.

7.1.2
You should:

- use dedicated compost containers for growing organic mushrooms
- sterilise buildings and equipment using steam
- use physical and barrier methods for fly control
- use organic substrates such as manure, straw and plant material from organic holdings, and
- return spent mushroom compost to organic holdings for spreading.

7.1.3
Mushroom growing houses must be dedicated to organic production.

Substrates

7.1.4
Your mushroom substrate may only consist of the following materials:

- products from organic farming, for example straw (please see standard 7.1.6)
- manure from organic farming
- mineral products (those we allow in standard 4.8.8)
- peat (not chemically treated)
- wood (not chemically treated after felling, from organic or sustainable sources if possible)
- water, or
- soil from organic farming (provided you return the spent compost to the same farm).

7.1.5 Revised
With justification, you may use non-organic manure in the substrate if:

- you can demonstrate that you have not been able to get manure from an organic farm, and
- non-organic manure does not exceed 25% of the substrate.
Note – you must calculate this percentage as the fresh weight, before composting, of all components except the casing and any added water.

### 7.1.6 Revised
With our approval, you may use straw harvested in the second year of conversion if organic straw is not available.

#### Controlling disease

### 7.1.7
You may use:

- salt to control fungal diseases
- plant pest and disease control products listed in standards 4.11.4–4.11.6 and 4.11.8.

### 7.1.8
You must **not** use:

- chemical pesticides, either in the compost, sprayed on the crop or as a fog
- chlorinated water
- formaldehyde for sterilisation
- fumigation by methyl bromide
- mushroom bleaches, or
- post-harvest treatments of composites with fungicides.

#### Cleaning and hygiene of growing sheds

### 7.1.9 New
For cleaning mushroom growing sheds you should use:

- water or steam, or
- dry cleaning methods where they will not risk organic integrity

### 7.1.10 New
For cleaning mushroom growing sheds you may use all detergents, disinfectants, sterilants and terminal sanitisers allowed for use in the food industry, according to manufacturers’ instructions.
7.1.11 | New

After cleaning growing sheds you must rinse treated surfaces with potable water (fit for drinking) unless the mushroom substrate is put into the growing area after product has completely biodegraded.

7.1.12 | New

You must not:

- use formaldehyde,
- leave sanitisers in contact with the equipment before use with organic products, or
- use substances on contact surfaces that could taint or contaminate organic products.
Watercress production
8.0 Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management

Watercress production

8.1 Additional standards for watercress production
8.1 Additional standards for watercress production

8.1.1
Watercress production is water-based and therefore requires specific standards to ensure it meets the principles of organic production.

8.1.2
Watercress naturally grows in nutrient-poor water and gets most of its nutrients from the water. The levels of nutrients in the water leaving the unit should be lower than those of the water entering the unit.

8.1.3
Wherever possible, you should control pests and diseases by management means rather than using permitted pest and disease control products.

Conversion

8.1.4
You must convert your whole production unit at the same time, with a minimum conversion period of two crop cycles, that is planting and clearing the beds twice.

Water source

8.1.5
You must use water from natural springs or artesian wells which cannot be polluted by surface water or any other source of pollution.

8.1.6
You can only use pumped borehole water:

- in the summer when the river flow is too low, or
- to redirect water from natural springs elsewhere on the holding.

8.1.7
Water must be of drinking quality.
Bed management

8.1.8
You must:
• compost the gravel and crop residues removed after each crop
• separate the gravel after composting and re-use it on the beds
• spread the compost on organic land, and
• spread solid material from the settling tanks on organic land.

8.1.9 | Revised
With our approval, you may remove the gravel less frequently and not re-use it.

Nutrient supplements

8.1.10
The growing crop must derive the majority of each nutrient from the natural water. You may make up the balance from nutrient sources. Please refer to section 4.8.

8.1.11
You must measure levels of phosphate and other added nutrients in the water regularly.

Note – we expect you to measure levels weekly, but with our agreement, and provided the tests reveal no problems, you may do it less frequently.

Controlling disease

8.1.12 | Revised
With our approval, you may use zinc to assist in the control of crook root.
9
Wild harvesting
9.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:
Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management

Wild harvesting

9.1 Additional standards for wild harvesting
9.2 Wild harvesting management plan
9.3 Harvesting
9.1 Additional standards for wild harvesting

9.1.1
These standards cover the harvesting of plants, plant products and fungi from the wild (but not animals). Some people also call this ‘wild crafting’. These standards cover a wide range of products and geographical areas.

9.1.2
Most plants used in natural medicine are collected from the wild and therefore the control of this activity is vital. The aim of our standards is to make sure that when you harvest wild products:

• the yields you take are sustainable
• you protect the biodiversity of the area, and
• you prevent contamination.

9.1.3
Organic certification of wild harvested materials:

• is a way of preventing indiscriminate harvesting
• is of fundamental importance in preserving cultural traditions
• helps maintain biodiversity
• provides an income to some of the world’s poorest people, and
• makes sure products from these plants are of high quality.

9.1.4
You must meet these standards if you want to trade and label plants and other products you harvest from the wild as organic.

9.1.5
You must not use these standards for the harvesting of animals from the wild.

9.1.6
You must make sure all material you harvest meets local, national and international legislation and action plans. This includes the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Flora and Fauna (CITES) (www.cites.org).

9.1.7
You must not harvest any species defined as ‘critically endangered’ in the IUCN red list (The World Conservation Union) (www.iucn.org).
9.1.8
You must **not** use areas for harvesting that have been treated with products we do not allow in these standards for at least three years.

9.1.9
The areas you use for harvesting must:

- be at least 10 metres from non-organic farming operations or areas sprayed with products we do not allow in these standards
- be at least 50 metres from motorways and dual carriageways, 25 metres from other major roads and 10 metres from other roads, and
- be a suitable distance from any other source of pollution or contamination.

9.1.10
It must be possible for us to inspect the areas you use for harvesting.

9.1.11
You must send us maps with your application that identify your harvesting areas.

### 9.2 Wild harvesting management plan

9.2.1
You must have a wild harvesting management plan which we approve and which you must review and up-date each year. You must be able to show us through your records that you have kept to this plan.

9.2.2
Your wild harvesting management plan must include all your procedures for harvesting that we require in these standards, and must:

- identify the harvesting areas
- include a register of all the groups or organisations involved in harvesting, and detail their management structures and the people responsible for them, and
- include a harvest plan (see standard 9.2.3) for each harvesting operation, which you must agree with us before harvest.

9.2.3
Your harvest plan must detail:

- the person responsible for the operation
• the names of the harvesters  
• other users or harvesting operations in the same area, and how you have made sure operations are co-ordinated  
• your controls on harvesting, such as times, areas, species identification by the operators, harvesting rules, quantities, species, qualities and making good, and  
• environmental management procedures and records.

9.2.4
If you wish to change your harvesting plan, you must ask our permission.

9.2.5
You must have an ecological survey for each species harvested. The survey must:
• show that harvest areas can sustain the level of collection you propose  
• include a definition of the sustainable annual yield  
• detail the impact on other species in the harvest areas, and  
• detail the general ecological impact of the operation.

9.2.6
You must identify the IUCN status of species you harvest and justify reasons for harvesting endangered or vulnerable species.

9.2.7
If there are any standards that you cannot keep to, you must tell us. We will consider each situation on a case-by-case basis.

Harvesters

9.2.8
You must identify a reliable person to be responsible for your wild harvesting operations.

9.2.9
You must clearly identify the manager of your harvesting operation who must:
• be familiar with the harvest area  
• have written annual authorisation from local and national regulatory bodies or other authorities where available
• have a signed contract with the harvesters, agents and middle men, this must include an agreement stating how and what to harvest
• co-operate and co-ordinate with any other harvesting operation activity in the area, and
• make sure harvesters identify plants correctly to prevent mistaken collection of rare or other non-target species.

9.2.10

You must have a training programme for all harvesters that includes:
• plant and species identification
• lifecycle of plants
• hygiene, and
• food safety, where suitable.

9.2.11

You must identify, act on and record any food-borne diseases your harvesters are carrying to make sure they don’t take part during their illness.

9.2.12

To encourage a sense of environmental responsibility to their work, you must provide harvesters with acceptable pay and conditions.

Note – you should provide written terms and conditions of employment or engagement and show that these meet national legislation as a minimum.

Sustainable yield

9.2.13

Your environmental management must:
• maintain the species you harvest, and
• have minimum effect on the natural plant community, including other species in the area.

9.2.14

You must monitor and record the sustainability of your harvesting operations on an on-going basis.

9.2.15

You must not:
• exceed the sustainable yield of the area, or
• damage the surrounding areas through careless activities or other activities linked with the operation.

9.2.16

If you think you might exceed the sustainable yield we have agreed, you must tell us.

**Integrity, traceability and records**

9.2.17

You must make sure all equipment you use is clean and free from the remains of previously harvested plants.

9.2.18

You must store samples of the materials you harvest and you must keep a record of the sampling. These will depend on the type of operation but you must show due diligence.

9.2.19

You must have record keeping systems that can trace material from harvest to point of sale.

9.3 Harvesting

9.3.1

Your harvesting activities should be away from paths or trails to keep the ambience of the area.

9.3.2

You must harvest at the best time of the year to make the most of plant resources and minimise environmental impact.

9.3.3

You must take only the parts of the plant you need whenever possible. This will keep any loss of fertility to a minimum.
9.3.4
You must harvest in a suitable way for each species. The method should allow the plant to regenerate.

9.3.5
You must leave species that reproduce by seed or spore to mature and reach reproductive age before you harvest from them.

9.3.6
When harvesting plants that reproduce by corms or bulbs, you must leave enough to sustain the species in the harvesting area.

9.3.7
If you are harvesting the aerial parts of plants that reproduce by root or rhizome, then you must leave the root or rhizome alone.

9.3.8
If you are harvesting the root or rhizome you must leave enough in the ground for it to continue to grow, or you must replant rootlets and rhizome material. You must not replant a harvested area with more plants than there were before.

9.3.9
If you are harvesting bark you must manage the trees in a suitable way for the species. This will include coppicing rather than felling where appropriate.

9.3.10
You may harvest bark from recently fallen trees.

9.3.11 | Revised
With our approval, you may remove bark from living trees where this does not affect the health of the tree.

9.3.12
If you remove bark from living trees you should remove it by hand, not machine and from the limbs, not the trunk.
9.3.13

You must:

- always make sure there are enough mature plants left after harvesting to maintain habitats that other wildlife depend on
- avoid damage to neighbouring species, especially rare or threatened species
- take particular care with species that have symbiotic relationships or otherwise depend on each other
- avoid harvesting operations that lead to erosion, and
- take and keep samples of each batch harvested.
10

Animal welfare and general livestock management
10.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage

**Animal welfare and general livestock management**

10.1 Principles of organic livestock management
10.2 Keeping livestock healthy
10.3 Livestock management plan
10.4 Managing your herd or flock through conversion
10.5 Simultaneous conversion
10.6 Bringing in livestock
10.7 Keeping organic and non-organic livestock
10.8 Managing sick or injured animals
10.9 Veterinary treatments
10.10 Control of specific ailments
10.11 Grazing livestock
10.12 Housing livestock
10.13 Feeding livestock
10.14 Handling and transporting livestock
10.15 Identification
10.1 Principles of organic livestock management

10.1.1 You should manage your livestock with special care for their welfare and health. You should also satisfy your animals’ behavioural needs, and not merely avoid cruelty. The Farm Animal Welfare Council refers to this as ‘positive animal welfare’.

10.1.2 To keep your animals in good health you need to have good management practices, including a high standard of welfare, the right diet and good stockmanship. You should:

• aim to prevent disease and injury
• increase the ability of your stock to resist infection, parasitic attack and metabolic disorders, and
• increase their ability to overcome injury by rapid healing.

10.2 Keeping livestock healthy

10.2.1 The health and welfare of your animals is fundamental to managing your organic livestock. You must:

• avoid cruelty
• satisfy the needs of your animals by handling, housing and transporting them with proper care and attention
• follow these standards, which at least meet government welfare codes and are often stricter, and
• always look after your animals’ physical and behavioural needs, health and well-being so that they enjoy the ‘five freedoms’ – freedom from:
  i. malnutrition
  ii. physical discomfort and extremes of temperature
  iii. injury and disease
  iv. fear and distress, and
  v. unnecessary restrictions of behaviour.

10.2.2 If you are, or have been convicted of animal cruelty you must immediately inform us. We will immediately suspend your licence for organic livestock and after investigation we may:
• terminate it, or
• reinstate it, possibly with additional requirements. This may include extra inspections at your expense.

10.2.3

You must:

• allow all your livestock access to water at all times and regularly check piped water supplies to make sure they are working, and
• ensure there is no more than an eight hour period where you cannot give your livestock access to water, such as in collecting pens and during transport.

10.2.4

To limit your animal health problems, you should base your disease prevention on:

• the selection of appropriate breeds or strains
• keeping your herds or flocks closed which will reduce stress and prevent you introducing diseases
• excellent animal husbandry practices which will encourage strong resistance to disease and help prevent infection
• the use of high quality feed, regular exercise and access to pasturage which will encourage your animals’ natural immunity, and
• keeping the correct stocking density and avoiding overstocking.

10.2.5

You must choose breeds or strains that:

• can adapt to your organic system and the local conditions
• have vitality and resistance to disease
• avoid specific disease or health problems associated with intensive production, and
• avoid problems at birth.

10.2.6

You should raise traditional, local or rare livestock breeds to retain genetic diversity.

10.2.7

You must **not** use cloning or embryo transfer.
10.2.8

If you rely on buying in or selling stores or breeding animals, for example between upland and lowland farms, you should:

- put measures in place to make sure you control diseases and parasites effectively and minimise stress, and
- establish long-term links with organic farms for buying or selling these animals.

10.3 Livestock management plan

10.3.1 Revised

You must develop and agree with us a plan that addresses how you will meet the standards in each of the following areas:

- sourcing and converting
- health and welfare
- feeding and grazing (including stocking density and rotation)
- housing
- handling and transporting, and
- slaughter.

Note – please send us an initial copy of your livestock management plan for approval. We will review any routine updates to it at your annual inspection. If you make any major changes or you start a new livestock enterprise please send us an updated copy for approval.

10.3.2

You must review your livestock management plan regularly and keep it up-to-date.

Note – you should integrate your livestock management plan with your cropping plan where relevant. Please ask us if you would like a livestock management plan template or guidance notes.

10.3.3

As part of your livestock management plan you must draw up a health plan to show how you will build health and reduce disease. This must suit your own farm and should allow you to minimise your use of veterinary medicines. This must include:

- how you will manage the health of your animals, both during and after conversion
- how you will monitor and diagnose disease
• the disease control measures you will apply, and
• how you will reduce any health problems your animals already have.

Note – we strongly recommend that you draw up your plan with the advice and expertise of your vet. This will allow your vet to become fully used to your farm and our standards before any emergency occurs. If you need more guidance and information to write your health and welfare plan please call us.

10.4 Managing your herd or flock through conversion

10.4.1
When you are converting your livestock, you must keep all the land you are using for your stock, for feed or grazing, to the standards for organic crop husbandry (chapter 4).

10.4.2
As long as they are under your management you must keep your livestock to our standards.

10.4.3
You may:
• convert your stock to organic after you have converted your land, or
• convert your land and stock to organic simultaneously, known as simultaneous conversion.

10.4.4
You may only sell livestock as organic if:
• their dams are either converted or organic breeding stock, and
• they have been kept to full organic standards throughout their lives.

10.4.5
You must not sell any of your livestock or livestock products:
• as ‘in-conversion’ at any time, or
• as ‘organic’ until some of your land is organic and we have added those products to your trading schedule.
10.5 Simultaneous conversion

10.5.1
If you wish to use simultaneous conversion, we will agree a conversion start date with you. Once you have started conversion you must keep your land and livestock to our standards.

10.5.2
In simultaneous conversion, you must convert all of the livestock and the land you use for their grazing and animal feed at the same time. This land must provide at least 60% of the nutritional needs of these animals. You can calculate the feed you produce from this converting unit as part of the organic percentage for these animals. But you must not trade or sell this feed as organic.

Timescales for simultaneous conversion

10.5.3
The total combined conversion period for the land and stock, before you can sell the animals or their products as organic, is 24 months. Simultaneous conversion only applies to:

- beef calves born at least 12 weeks after the start of the conversion
- other offspring conceived after the start of the conversion
- products of existing breeding stock, for example milk.

10.5.4
You may only sell existing breeding stock as converted breeding stock.

10.5.5
If you have any other stock on the converting unit you must agree with us, through your conversion plan, when you will remove them.

Trading stock during simultaneous conversion

10.5.6
You may bring onto, or sell off, the unit any livestock that comply with the requirements of simultaneous conversion (including fully organic animals) but you must:
• **not** sell any of them or their products as organic until both buying and selling units have completed their conversion periods
• only trade them once between holdings, before their final sale as finished stock, though if you ask us we may allow a second trading in exceptional circumstances
• ask us to detail the stock on your trading schedule as ‘stock reared under simultaneous conversion’ before you trade or sell them (this will normally be after your second inspection), and
• keep records to verify that you have met all of our standards, for example livestock movements, conversion details and feed.

### 10.5.7
You must send a completed livestock transfer document and a copy of your trading schedule with any traded stock.

Note – we can provide the forms you need for trading your stock.

### 10.6 Bringing in livestock

#### 10.6.1
You should breed your own replacements from your own closed herd or flock.

#### 10.6.2
If you do not have these available you must source from, in order of preference:

• other organic herds or flocks
• converted breeding stock, or
• non-organic herds or flocks, for which you must ask our permission.

#### 10.6.3
You must be able to show us that organic or converted stock are not available before you bring in non-organic animals. You must comply with the additional conversion standards 10.6.7–10.6.13, so please check these first.

Note – a wide range of organic and converted breeding stock is available. You can use the organic marketplace to source them (www.soilassociation.org/organicmarketplace). If you need more information please contact us.

#### 10.6.4
If you do bring animals into your herd or flock, you should:

• take care to bring in healthy stock
• check that the supplying farm has observed the animal welfare requirements of these standards, and
• check that the supplying farm has kept all medical treatment and statutory records for these animals.

10.6.5

You must:

• obtain a completed livestock transfer document from the vendor for any organic or converted breeding stock
• make sure any transport you use meets the requirements of these standards (see section 10.14)
• carefully check the animals for disease or injury on arrival and take appropriate action if you find either
• manage the animals organically from the time you bring them in, unless you are converting your land before your stock, and
• keep new or returning stock separate and on the holding for at least 21 days for disease control and observation. You should put single animals with at least one other and keep them separate for this time.

10.6.6

You must not:

• bring in any stock that has been produced using transgenic or other genetic engineering techniques, or
• bring in any stock from livestock markets, unless the market is licensed by an organic certifier or you are buying a rare breed or pedigree animal (see standard 10.6.12).

Bringing in non-organic replacements

10.6.7

You may bring in males for breeding from non-organic farms, provided that you then rear and feed them according to the standards.

10.6.8

With our permission, you may bring in non-organic female breeding stock only:

• if you can show that suitable organic stock are not available
• if you can show that suitable converted breeding stock are not available
• up to 10% of your existing herd or flock size per year, and
• provided they have not yet given birth, in other words, they are before their first calving, lambing or farrowing.
10.6.9
If you have less than five sheep, pigs or goats or less than 10 cattle you may only bring in one non-organic animal of that species per year.

10.6.10
With our permission, you may increase the percentage of non-organic female breeding stock you bring in (standard 10.6.8) to 40% of your existing adult female breeding stock. You may only do this if suitable organic animals are not available and when:

• you are significantly increasing the size of your herd or flock
• you are changing breed
• you are developing a new livestock enterprise, or
• it is a rare breed.

These animals must not yet have given birth, unless they are a rare breed.

10.6.11
With our permission, when you are establishing a herd or flock for the first time and suitable organic animals are not available, you may bring in non-organic animals according to the following conditions:

• pullets must not be more than 18 weeks old and must comply with standards 20.4.3 and 20.4.4
• chicks for meat production must be less than three days old
• calves must be less than six months old and have been reared organically from weaning
• lambs and kids must be less than 60 days old and reared organically from weaning
• piglets must weigh less than 35kg and have been reared organically from weaning.

10.6.12
You may, with our permission, purchase non-organic rare breed and pedigree animals from specialist and pedigree sales held at livestock market premises. You may only do this if they are not available from direct sources.

10.6.13
If, due to high mortality, you need to renew your herd or flock, you may, with our permission, use non-organic animals. We will only allow this if suitable organic animals are not available.
10.7 | Keeping organic and non-organic livestock

10.7.1
On your organic holding you may only keep non-organic livestock:

• of the same species as your organic stock (parallel production), if your conversion plan shows that you intend to convert them in the future, or
• of a different species to your organic stock if you:
  i. keep them on separate parcels of land
  ii. keep them in separate buildings, and
  iii. keep separate financial records for them.

10.7.2
You must tell us of the exact quantities of livestock or livestock products you produce, how you have identified them and confirm to us that you have applied all of the measures you have agreed with us.

10.7.3
With our permission, you may graze non-organic stock on your organic or converting land for a limited time if:

• there are no suitable organic animals available
• they do not graze your land for more than 120 days each calendar year (you should calculate the total length of time that non-organic stock are on your whole holding, not on individual fields)
• they come from extensive husbandry or a system with a maximum stocking rate equivalent to 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year (please see standard 4.7.27 to calculate this)
• you do not graze organic animals on those fields at the same time, and
• this does not adversely affect your clean grazing plan.

10.8 | Managing sick or injured animals

10.8.1
If any of your animals become sick or injured, despite all of your measures to prevent this, you should have facilities to isolate or hospitalise any sick or quarantined animals. These must conform to government welfare codes.

10.8.2
You must:
• treat any sick or injured animal immediately, even if this would mean it would lose its organic status, and
• isolate the animal if necessary, using suitable housing.

Note – if you fail to treat a sick or injured animal we may withdraw your organic certification.

### 10.9 Veterinary treatments

#### 10.9.1
If you need to use veterinary treatments you must use complementary therapies and trace elements, preferably with professional veterinary guidance, and provided that their healing effect works for the species and the condition you are treating.

#### 10.9.2
You may only use other veterinary treatments, as advised by your vet, if:

- complementary therapies and trace elements don’t work or are unlikely to work effectively and you need to treat to avoid suffering or distress to your animal, or
- you have identified a disease risk which prevents you from keeping your animals healthy through management alone. We would, for example, allow the use of cyromazin for fly strike, when this is known to be a problem. You must detail known disease risks in your health plan.

#### 10.9.3
You must:

- use veterinary treatments for your animals, buildings, equipment and facilities if national or EU legislation requires it, even if this means your animals will lose their organic status, and
- have veterinary approval for using unlicensed herbal preparations.

#### 10.9.4
You must **not**:

- use veterinary medicines as a preventative treatment without our permission
- use substances (such as antibiotics or coccidiostats) to increase the growth rate or production of your animals, or
- use surgical or chemical procedures on any animal unless it is to improve their health or well-being or that of the group.
10.9.5 Revised

You must **not** sell your livestock or their produce as organic if, within any one year, you treat them with more than:

- three courses of (non-complementary) veterinary medicines, or
- one course of (non-complementary) veterinary medicines if they are killed for meat at less than one year old.

Note – excluded from this are vaccines, parasite control treatments and compulsory eradication orders. A course of treatment means all the measures you need to take to restore the health of your animal following an illness.

Note – the organic status of the animal will be lost at the start of the fourth course of treatment.

### Antibiotics

10.9.6

If you use antibiotics, they may reduce the natural immunity of the animal you treat. You may see a rapid initial recovery, but your animal may then be more prone to re-infection. You should only use them under the advice of your vet and only:

- when you do not have any other effective treatments available
- after major trauma, such as surgery or accident, or
- when they are the best way to reduce suffering, save life or restore your animal’s health.

10.9.7

You must **not** use:

- antibiotics on a whole herd or flock basis to prevent disease, or
- fluoroquinolone antibiotics except with our permission and only to treat individual animals.

Note – the following drugs are licensed fluoroquinolones in the UK: Enrofloxacin, Danofloxacin mesylate, Danofloxacin hydrochloride and Marbofloxacin. Please liaise with your vet to clarify the type of antibiotic you are using, as this is not a complete list and the range of drugs may change.

10.9.8

From 1 January 2009 you must **not** use third and fourth generation cephalosporin antibiotics except with our permission and only to treat individual animals. We strongly recommend that you limit your use of these antibiotics before this date if possible. ➤
Note – the following drugs are licensed third and fourth generation cephalosporins in the UK: Ceftiofur, Cefoparazone and Cefquinome. Please liaise with your vet to clarify the type of antibiotic you are using, as this is not a complete list and the range of drugs may change.

### Hormone treatments

**10.9.9**

You must only give hormone treatments to individual animals and only:

- if you need to induce parturition for veterinary reasons (natural prostaglandin or corticosteroid only), or
- for specific disorders where you have no alternative, for example cows which are not coming into heat.

**10.9.10**

You must **not** use hormones for:

- promoting growth
- synchronising heat
- stimulating production (this includes bovine somatotropin), or
- suppressing natural growth controls.

### Vaccines

**10.9.11**

You may only use vaccines:

- in consultation with your vet, and
- when there is a known disease risk which you cannot control by other means, either on your farm or on your neighbour’s land.

**10.9.12**

You must:

- use the simplest vaccine available, where possible single, two-in-one, or four-in-one vaccines rather than more complex ones
- agree with your vet the best vaccines to protect your animals during the conversion period, and
- where possible reduce their use as you establish your organic unit.
10.9.13

You must **not** use veterinary and health care products containing GMOs or their derivatives. This includes:

- conventional medicines
- hormones
- vaccines
- bacterial products
- amino acids, and
- parasiticides.

Note – if you have no alternative but to treat a sick animal with a GM-derived veterinary product, you must use it but you must not sell the animal or its products as organic. Please refer to standard 3.6.15.

### Anaesthetics

10.9.14

You may only use anaesthetics:

- to prevent suffering, as advised by your vet, and
- as required by law.

### Withdrawal periods after using veterinary medicines

10.9.15

If you treat your animals with any medicines you must wait until after the end of the minimum withdrawal periods below before you can produce or sell their products as organic.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of medication</th>
<th>Withdrawal period (days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Legal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homeopathic</td>
<td>None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaccines</td>
<td>None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbal, vitamin, mineral and glucose preparations</td>
<td>None specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other veterinary medicines</td>
<td>Off licence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off licence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0–2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Type of medication**

- All other veterinary medicines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of medication</th>
<th>Withdrawal period (days)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19–28</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29+</td>
<td>2x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note – disinfectants are not subject to withdrawal periods.

---

### 10.10 Control of specific ailments

#### 10.10.1

You must include treatments and control measures for specific ailments in your animal health plan which we must approve.

---

**Anaemia**

#### 10.10.2

You may use:

- ferrous sulphate crystals, or
- iron injections if you have iron deficient soils, or chronic anaemia in free range systems.
Bloat

10.10.3
You may use:

- vegetable oils, or
- proprietary surfactants.

BSE

10.10.4
Due to the long incubation periods of BSE and the possibility of compound feeds containing contaminated products in the past, organic herds are not immune to outbreaks of BSE.

10.10.5
As there is evidence that the infective material is not killed by sterilisation, you and your vet should use a new needle for each individual animal.

10.10.6
You must not bring in an animal from another herd in which there has been a case of BSE in the last six years.

10.10.7
If your converting herd is ‘at risk’ from BSE you must remove all ‘contemporaries’ and first generation progeny. You must not sell these as organic. You must:

- remove them from your herd by the time it achieves full organic status, or
- remove them from your simultaneously converting herd before you market any stock reared under simultaneous conversion.

10.10.8
Your herd is ‘at risk’ if:

- one of your cows has BSE
- you have brought in an animal from another herd which has had a case of BSE in the last six years, or
- you have brought in an animal since 31 December 1993 with an unknown BSE history (we class this animal as a contemporary).
Note – we define a contemporary as an animal originating from the same herd which shared the same food or, if this cannot be identified, was born within three months either side of the date of birth of the BSE case.

10.10.9

If you suspect a case of BSE in your herd, or have a case confirmed you must:

• inform your national government agriculture department
• quarantine the animal and report it to the authorities as soon as possible
• if confirmed, remove it immediately and inform us
• take all precautions to prevent the spread of infective material
• follow full disinfection procedures after removal of the infected animal
• trace the offspring of any infected animal, and let us know, and
• not submit any suspected or confirmed case for surgery (including caesarean).

Flies

10.10.10

You should use applications of herbal repellents for fly control.

Note – there is no withdrawal period for herbal repellents.

10.10.11

You may use:

• iodoform based products to treat fly strike
• blowfly traps, as long as they don’t contain materials we don’t allow, and
• cyromazin for fly control in sheep – this is our preferred treatment as it is specific to flies through its unique action.

Note – if used on dairy cows, where the statutory withdrawal period is nil, you must apply a 48 hour withdrawal period.

10.10.12  | Revised

With our approval, you may use a deltamethrin, alphacypermethrin or cypermethrin pour-on for the treatment of an existing blow-fly, ked, tick or lice infestation in sheep and goats, and against new forest eye and severe head fly infestation in cattle.

Note – if used on dairy cows, where the statutory withdrawal period is nil, you must apply a 48 hour withdrawal period.
Foot problems

10.10.13
You may use:

- zinc sulphate
- copper sulphate
- iodine
- foot rot vaccines, but only where:
  i. you have justified this in your animal health plan
  ii. there is no alternative
  iii. you reduce its use over time, and
  iv. you use the vaccine together with rotational grazing, or

- formaldehyde footbaths, at a maximum concentration of 3%, but only for the treatment of scald in sheep and foul in the foot for cattle. We are permitting this whilst investigating other alternatives. You must:
  i. justify its use in your animal health plan, and tell us how you will, where possible, reduce its use, and
  ii. leave it in the footbath for 24 hours after use, to enable breakdown of the product.

10.10.14
You must dispose of leftover footbath solution by:

- using a licensed waste disposal contractor, or
- spreading it onto your land, either by:
  i. pouring it onto manure or slurry for later spreading, or
  ii. diluting it 1:3 and spreading it onto land that has a low water pollution risk. Some of your livestock may be susceptible to the toxicity of the chemicals used. You must keep them away from areas of your land used for disposal for at least one month.

10.10.15
You must dispose of any footbath concentrate you do not want by using a licensed waste disposal contractor.

Note – your local authority will have details of licensed contractors.

10.10.16
You must not dispose of footbath concentrate or solution to soak-aways or into the public sewer.
**Grass staggers**

**10.10.17**

You may:

- dust your pastures with calcined magnesite
- use dietary/liquid magnesium supplements, and
- treat with magnesium sulphate.

**Mange in cattle and pigs**

**10.10.18**

You may use:

- eprinomectin to treat mange in dairy cows, and
- moxidectin to treat mange in beef cattle and dry dairy cows.

**10.10.19 | Revised**

With our approval, you may use doramectin for the treatment of mange in pigs.

**Mastitis**

**10.10.20**

You must, as part of your health plan (standard 10.3.3), detail the strategies you will use to control mastitis within your dairy herd or flock. This must include:

- details of known mastitis-causing bacteria present on the farm and the treatments for them
- how you monitor and record cell count information (preferably, this should be cow specific)
- the trigger levels for treatments
- how you manage cows being treated with antibiotics
- how you monitor treatment success
- your parlour routine
- maintenance of the parlour and milking equipment
- how you manage the cows, including nurse cows, youngstock and heifers, when at grass and when housed
- your dry cow management
- your breeding strategy for replacements, and
- your biosecurity plan and quarantine measures for brought-in stock.
10.10.21
You should:
• strip the affected quarter frequently
• use cold water treatments
• use licensed herbal udder creams
• use effective homeopathy
• use teat sealants at drying off to prevent new infection.

10.10.22
If you diagnose mastitis:
• you must identify the bacteria concerned, and
• you may use lactation antibiotics, but only where no other treatment would be effective.

10.10.23
If you fail an antibiotic test (that is, over the maximum residue limit) we will suspend your licence for milk, pending a review.

10.10.24
You must not use antibiotic dry cow therapy as a preventative treatment on your whole herd or flock.

10.10.25 | Revised
With our approval, you may use antibiotic dry cow therapy, but only on individual animals where no other treatment would be effective.

Milk fever

10.10.26
You may use:
• calcium borogluconate, or
• magnesium and phosphorus salts.

Navel ill

10.10.27
You may use iodine solution at birth to prevent infection.
**Orf**

**10.10.28**

You should use homeopathic remedies to control orf in sheep and goats.

**Husk**

**10.10.29**

You may only use oral husk vaccine for young calves and only under veterinary guidance.

**Parasites general (external)**

See also flies, mange and sheep scab

**10.10.30**

You may only treat your whole herd/flock or group for external parasites with our permission.

**10.10.31**

You must **not** use organo-phosphorus or organo-chlorine (gamma HCH) compounds in any form for any purpose unless you are required to by law. This includes dips, sprays and creams for warble fly, external parasites, sheep scab and fly control.

**10.10.32**

If you are required by law to use organo-phosphorus compounds or organo-chlorine (gamma HCH) then you must **not**:

- use any treated animals for organic meat production, or
- sell the milk of any treated dairy animals as organic. You must re-convert them before they can produce organic milk.

**Parasites general (internal)**

**10.10.33**

You should control these by:

- good livestock management practices and, where appropriate:
i. optimum stocking rates  
ii. rotational and clean grazing systems, and  
iii. mixed stocking

- using breeds with higher resistance to infection, and  
- breeding for greater resistance.

**10.10.34**

You may use anthelmintics on individual animals:

- after you have checked that they are infected (for example through faecal egg counts), and  
- using treatments we have agreed with you in your animal health plan.

**10.10.35**

With our permission, you may use anthelmintics on a whole herd, flock or group of animals but only as part of a disease control programme. We must agree this in your animal health plan.

**10.10.36**

Whenever you treat your animals with anthelmintics you must:

- tell us how you intend to improve control in future without using these treatments  
- monitor how effective your control programme is, for example, by faecal egg counts, and  
- where possible, target your treatments at the breeding females rather than their offspring.

Note – you should use benzimidazoles or levamisoles rather than other drenches.

**Scour in young stock**

**10.10.37**

You should prevent scour by:

- clean grazing systems  
- well-ventilated housing  
- outdoor calving or lambing  
- using clean dry bedding  
- providing young with colostrum from their mother within six hours of birth, and  
- using clean utensils.
You may treat your young stock for scour by using:

- glucose/electrolyte solution treatments (oral rehydration therapy), if it does not contain antibiotics or other substances we do not allow, and
- veterinary medicines for treating individual cases.

You must not use, on a routine basis:

- antibiotics, or
- anthelmintics.

### Sheep scab (mange)

You should try to prevent scab by:

- keeping a closed flock
- using double fencing between your organic land and neighbouring land to prevent cross infection
- buying sheep from flocks with no history of scab for at least two years (if you cannot guarantee this, you should put those sheep into quarantine for 10 weeks)
- asking a vet to inspect any sheep you buy and certify them as scab-free before bringing them onto your farm
- not buying sheep from areas where resistance to flumethrin has been identified, and
- disinfecting transport vehicles, shearing equipment and overalls before use.

---

With our permission, you may use synthetic pyrethroid dip for sheep scab, but only where scab is known or suspected.

Note – synthetic pyrethroid dips currently have no authorisation for use in the UK.

With our approval, you may use the following treatments for sheep scab:

- two treatments of moxidectin ten days apart when you suspect infection, and
- doramectin as a single injection to treat flocks that are showing signs of infestation.
10.10.43
You must dispose of any spent dip by:
• using an authorised contractor to dispose of the dip, or
• mixing it with agricultural slaked lime at the rate of 50kg to 1,000 litres of spent dip, mixing it every two to three days for 14 days, then spreading it onto level grassland away from watercourses, preferably after diluting it with slurry or farmyard manure. You must not graze your stock on this land for at least one month.

Note – if you are disposing of dip yourself you must obtain written authorisation from the Environment Agency (England and Wales), the Scottish Environment Protection Agency, or Department of the Environment (Northern Ireland).

10.10.44
You must not buy sheep from unknown origin.

10.10.45
You should bring in cattle from herds that have recently tested negative to TB.

10.10.46
You may only use avermectin-based products as a pour-on treatment when a statutory authority requires it.

10.11 Grazing livestock

10.11.1
You must allow all your livestock access to pasture unless the following circumstances temporarily prevent this:
• the health or welfare of the animal
• the weather conditions and the state of the ground, or ➤
• community or national requirements relating to specific animal health problems.

**10.11.2**

You must, where necessary, provide sufficient protection for your stock against predation and against rain, wind, sun and extreme temperatures, depending on local conditions and breed.

**10.11.3**

You must manage your stock and keep their stocking density low enough to prevent:

- poaching of the soil
- over-grazing of vegetation
- the application of more than 170kg of nitrogen/ha/year, and
- pollution of water courses.

### Grazing non-organic stock on your conversion land

**10.11.4  |  Revised**

With our approval, you may graze your own non-organic stock on your conversion land provided we have agreed it as part of your conversion plan.

### Grazing your organic stock on common land

**10.11.5**

We regard common land differently from organic and list it as a separate category on your licence.

**10.11.6  |  Revised**

With our approval, you may graze your organic stock on common land if:

- the land is registered with the National Register of Common Land, and
- you can show that it has not been treated with any products we don’t allow for at least three years (you must prove this by a graziers’ association agreement).

Note – in these circumstances, there will be no conversion period for the land.
10.11.7
If the common land is not registered with the National Register of Common Land or if it might have been treated with any products we don’t allow in the last three years, it must complete a 24 month conversion period following your application to us.

10.11.8
After we have registered the common land and you wish to graze it, you must be able to show us that:

- the land is not treated with products we don’t allow
- any non-organic stock which graze the land come from extensive systems
- the stocking rate does not produce more than 170kg of nitrogen per hectare per year (please see standard 4.7.27 to calculate this)
- you can manage your organic stock separately from any non-organic stock that use the land, for example they are clearly hefted
- your stock are clearly identified, for example by using ear tags, and
- you are managing your stock to full organic standards in every other way.

10.12 Housing livestock

10.12.1
Please refer to the standards for individual livestock categories for other housing requirements, including stocking densities.

10.12.2
You do not have to provide housing for your livestock if:

- the climate in your area is suitable to allow your animals to live outdoors
- soil structure will remain undamaged, and
- you can prevent welfare problems by using suitable breeds and giving them adequate shelter.

10.12.3
The type of housing, bedding, ventilation and stocking density you use all have a direct impact on the health and welfare of your stock. You must provide for:

- the comfort and well-being of your animals
- their biological and behavioural needs, which will depend on their sex and the size of the group.
sufficient space to stand naturally, lie down easily, turn round, groom themselves and make all natural movements such as stretching and wing flapping
• easy access to feed and water
• suitable lighting, temperature, humidity, dust levels and natural ventilation, and
• an outdoor area for exercise, if we require it.

10.12.4
You must not:
• permanently house your livestock
• confine or tether your livestock routinely over long periods (for example in shippons, steadings and byres), or
• have more than 50% slats on the loafing or lying areas (you may bed over existing slatted floors).

10.12.5 | Revised
With our approval, you may tether individual animals:
• in circumstances such as shows or for welfare or safety, and
• for short periods (for example parts of a day).

Note – tethering may include outside on long chains or similar means of restraint provided that you make sure you comply with other welfare aspects.

10.12.6
Your livestock must not be in reach of any building materials treated with paints or other products that are toxic to animals.

10.12.7
You should use bedding from organic sources.

10.12.8
You must provide for all livestock:
• ample dry bedding in the lying/resting area (see standard 10.12.9), and
• a smooth but not slippery floor.

10.12.9
You may use the following for bedding:
• non-organic straw
• natural materials such as bean haulm, bracken or rushes
• sawdust and woodshavings (from untreated wood only)
• paper (not magazines), but not for poultry, and
• sand.

10.12.10 | Revised
With our approval, you may enrich bedding with mineral products that we allow in section 4.8.

10.12.11
You must not:
• have lying areas without bedding, or
• use peat as bedding material.

10.12.12 | Revised
You must:
• remove faeces, urine and uneaten or spilt food as often as necessary to keep smells to a minimum and avoid attracting insects and rodents, and
• only use products we allow in these standards to control insects or pests in your livestock housing or other areas.

10.12.13
Your housing, pens, equipment and utensils must be:
• kept in a condition that is unlikely to cause your animals injury, and
• properly cleaned and disinfected to prevent cross-infection and build up of disease.

10.12.14
You may only use the following cleaning products:
• potassium and sodium soap, water and steam
• milk of lime, lime, quicklime
• sodium hypochlorite (for example, as a liquid bleach)
• caustic soda, caustic potash, hydrogen peroxide
• natural essences of plants
• citric, peracetic, formic, lactic, oxalic and acetic acid
• phosphoric acid (dairy equipment only)
• nitric acid (dairy equipment only)
• alcohol
• formaldehyde
• cleaning and disinfection products for teats and milking facilities
• sodium carbonate.
10.13 Feeding livestock

Principles of livestock feeding

10.13.1
The natural health and vitality of your livestock depends on sound nutrition before conception and throughout their life. Organically grown feeds, fed in the form of a balanced ration, are the basic requirements of these standards.

10.13.2
You should take care when calculating livestock diets and use feed that:

- is 100% organically grown and of good quality
- is from your own farm, or from other organic farms in your region
- is in a form that allows your animals to carry out their natural feeding behaviours and that meets their digestive needs, and
- provides for high quality products rather than maximising output.

10.13.3
You should avoid sudden changes to your livestock diets.

10.13.4
You must provide the nutritional needs of your livestock at all stages of their development.

10.13.5
You must provide youngstock with maternal milk or organic milk from their own species when available.

10.13.6
You must only wean youngstock after the minimum period detailed in the standards specific to the livestock species.

10.13.7
You must not force feed your livestock.
Livestock diets

10.13.8
You must ensure that your livestock diets also comply with the relevant chapters 11–20 (standards specific to the livestock species).

10.13.9
You must keep full and accurate records of what you have fed to your animals. For each group of animals this must include:

- the ingredients that make up the feed
- where the ingredients are from
- whether the ingredient is organic, non-organic or in-conversion
- the amount of each ingredient in the total diet, as dry matter
- when you fed these feeds, and
- total dry matter intake (this must be justified in your livestock management plan).

Note – please refer to standards 3.4.19–3.4.21 for further feed record keeping requirements.

Cattle, sheep, goats and deer

10.13.10 | Revised
You must feed all your organic and converting cattle, sheep, goats and deer:

- 100% organic feed, or
- 100% in-conversion feed from your own holding, or
- a minimum of 70% organic feed if the remainder is brought-in in conversion feed.

Note – in-conversion feeds are those that come from land that is in the second year of conversion, however you may feed up to 20% of forage from your own holding in the first year of conversion. Any other crops or forage you harvest or graze before the final 12 months of the conversion period are non-organic.

Feeding scenarios for cattle, sheep, goats and deer | Revised
Annual or lifetime of animal:

- Required

100% organic
• If all in-conversion feed is from your own holding from 1 January 2009

100% home produced in-conversion

• If you buy in any in-conversion feed

70% minimum organic 30% maximum in-conversion

• Simultaneous conversion

70% minimum home produced 30% maximum brought-in in-conversion or organic

10.13.11

You must ensure for your cattle, sheep, goats and deer that:

• 60% of their daily diet on a dry matter basis consists of fresh or dried fodder, roughage or silage, and
• at least 60% of their total diet comes from your own holding or linked farms.

Feed requirements for cattle, sheep, goats and deer

60% minimum home produced/ from linked farms 40% maximum brought-in

60% minimum forage 40% maximum concentrate
You must feed all your organic and converting pigs and poultry:

- 100% organic feed, or
- 100% in-conversion feed from your own holding, or
- a minimum of 70% organic feed if the remainder is brought-in in conversion feed.

Note – in-conversion feeds are those that come from land that is in the second year of conversion. Any crops or forage you harvest or graze before 12 months from the start date of the conversion period are non-organic.

**Feeding scenarios for pigs and poultry** (annual or lifetime of animal)  

- **Required**
  
  | 100% **organic** |
  
- If all in-conversion feed is from your own holding and if you comply with standard 10.13.10 from 1 January 2009

  | 90% **minimum** home produced in-conversion | 10% **maximum** non-organic |

- If you buy in any in-conversion feed

  | 60% **minimum** organic | 30% **maximum** in-conversion if you are not using non-organic |
  | 10% **maximum** non-organic |
10.13.13 | Revised

If you cannot source 100% organic feed, you may feed pigs and poultry up to the following percentages of non-organic feed on an annual dry matter basis:

- 10% from 1 January 2009 to 31 December 2009
- 5% from 1 January 2010 to 31 December 2011.

Note – you can apply these percentages to individual animals, or to a group where you give them all the same ration.

With justification, you may use a non-organic straight (for example prairie meal) but you must:

- only use those on the Defra ‘green list’ (see www.soilassociation.org/web/sacert/sacertweb.nsf/B2/producer_forms.html or call the producer certification team on 0117 914 2412)
- complete a ‘justification for non-organic feed use form’
- be able to demonstrate that you have tried to source it as organic and record who from, and
- keep this form and have it ready for your next inspection.

If you wish to use an approved compound or a blended feed which contains non-organic ingredients, you do not need to apply to us for permission. We ask the feed manufacturer to do this.

10.13.14

Non-organic feed must not make up more than 25% (on a dry matter basis) of each animal’s diet each day (please see standard 10.13.13 for the requirements for using non-organic feed).

10.13.15 | Revised

You must not graze your organic stock on non-organic or first-year conversion land at any time, or on first-year conversion land except in compliance with standard 10.13.10.

10.13.16

If you are short of forage, with our permission, you may feed:

- over the non-organic allowances in 10.13.13 for pigs and poultry
- non-organic forage to cattle, sheep, goats and deer

but only:
• in exceptional circumstances (and we can only give permission with agreement from Defra), and
• for a limited period.

Examples of the circumstances we would consider are:
• exceptional weather conditions, such as drought or flooding
• infectious disease outbreaks
• contamination with toxic substances, or
• fires.

10.13.17
You must not feed, on an annual dry matter basis, more than 10% non-organic feed to pigs and poultry.

10.13.18
You must not feed any non-organic feed to cattle, sheep, goats or deer.

**Livestock feeds**

10.13.19
You should use:
• your own farm-produced organic feedstuffs where possible
• uncompounded feeds (straights).

10.13.20
When you use commercial, compounded or blended feeds they must be licensed by an organic certification body and comply with these standards.

10.13.21 | Revised
You may only use the following other substances.

Preserving and anti-microbial substances:
• E306 tocopherol-rich extract of natural origin as an anti-oxidant, and
• E236 formic acid, E270 lactic acid, E280 propionic acid, E260 acetic acid, E200 sorbic acid, E330 citric acid for preserving grain.

Binders:
• E551b colloidal silica
• E551c kieselgur
• E553 sepiolite ▶
- E558 bentonite
- E559 kaolinitic clays
- E556 vermiculite
- E559 perlite
- E470 calcium stearate of natural origin, and
- E560 natural mixtures of stearates and chlorite.

10.13.22

With justification, for preserving silage, you may use:

- E236 formic acid
- E270 lactic acid
- E280 propionic acid, and
- E260 acetic acid.

Note – you may only use these when weather conditions prevent adequate fermentation and alternative enzyme or bacterial additives would not be effective. If you use propionic acid please be aware that this leads to a reduction in the vitamin E of conserved forage and ensiled grain.

10.13.23 | Revised

With our approval, for incoming raw ingredients in which you have identified salmonella, you may use:

- E200 sorbic acid
- E236 formic acid
- E260 acetic acid
- E270 lactic acid
- E280 propionic acid, and
- E330 citric acid.

10.13.24 | Revised

You must only use livestock feeds that we allow in these standards. For example, you must not use:

- materials that have been solvent extracted (except those extracted using ethanol or water)
- manures (for example meat, offal, blood, tallow, feather meals and poultry manure)
- sawdust and other non-food ingredients and fillers
- ingredients that are genetically modified, or derived from genetically modified organisms
- straw or cereals treated with ammonia or caustic soda
- fats, oils and fatty acids used in diets to promote very early maturity or a high level of production
An IMAL WELFARE AND GENERAL LIVESTOCK MANAGEMENT

- urea
- commercially produced compounded or blended feeds which are not licensed by an organic certification body, or
- synthetic colouring agents.

Supplementing your livestock feeds

10.13.25
You should assess the mineral and trace element status of your farm and livestock. You should detail this in your livestock management plan.

10.13.26 | New
You may, with justification, use the following animal by-products in organic livestock diets under their feeding allowances stated in 10.13.10 for cattle, sheep, goats and deer and 10.13.13 for pigs and poultry:

- raw milks as defined in article 2 of directive 92/46/EEC
- milk powder, skimmed milk and skimmed milk powder
- buttermilk and buttermilk powder
- whey, whey powder and whey powder low in sugar, whey protein powder (extracted by physical treatment)
- casein powder and lactose powder
- curd and sour milk
- eggs and egg products for use as poultry feed, preferably from the same holding, and
- non-refined cod liver oil.

10.13.27 | Revised
You may use the following supplements without our permission:

- yeast and brewers’ yeast
- wheat germ (for vitamin E)
- sodium:
  - unrefined sea salt
  - coarse rock salt
  - sodium sulphate
  - sodium carbonate
  - sodium bicarbonate
  - sodium chloride
- potassium:
  - potassium chloride
• calcium:
  i. shells of aquatic animals (including cuttlefish bones)
  ii. calcium carbonate
  iii. calcium lactate
  iv. calcium gluconate

• phosphorus:
  i. deflorinated dicalcium phosphate
  ii. deflorinated monocalcium phosphate
  iii. monosodium phosphate
  iv. calcium-magnesium phosphate
  v. calcium-sodium phosphate

• magnesium:
  i. calcined magnesite (anhydrous magnesia)
  ii. magnesium sulphate
  iii. magnesium chloride
  iv. magnesium carbonate
  v. magnesium phosphate

• sulphur:
  i. sodium sulphate

• micro-organisms allowed under directive 70/524/EEC, if they are not genetically modified
• vitamins allowed under directive 70/524/EEC which are derived from raw materials occurring naturally in feed
• synthetic vitamins but only for non-herbivores and only if they are nature identical
• seaweed meal as a mineral supplement, or
• fishmeal for non-herbivores.

10.13.28 | Revised

With our approval, you may use trace elements of the following minerals. You must include details and justification for their use in the livestock management plan:

• iron:
  i. ferrous (II) carbonate
  ii. ferrous (II) sulphate (monohydrate and heptahydrate)
  iii. ferric (III) oxide

• iodine:
  i. calcium iodate (anhydrous and hexahydrate)
ii. sodium iodide

• cobalt:
  i. cobaltous (II) sulphate (monohydrate and heptahydrate)
  ii. basic cobaltous (II) carbonate (monohydrate)

• copper:
  i. copper (II) oxide
  ii. basic copper (II) carbonate (monohydrate)
  iii. copper (II) sulphate (pentahydrate)

• manganese:
  i. manganous (II) carbonate
  ii. manganous oxide and manganic oxide
  iii. manganous (II) sulphate (mono and tetrahydrate)

• zinc:
  i. zinc carbonate
  ii. zinc oxide
  iii. zinc sulphate (mono and heptahydrate)

• molybdenum:
  i. ammonium molybdate
  ii. sodium molybdate

• selenium:
  i. sodium selenate
  ii. sodium selenite.

10.13.29 | Revised

With our approval, you may use the following mineral supplementation but only containing the minerals listed in standard 10.13.28. You must include details and justification for their use in the livestock management plan:

• straight mineral licks free from additives
• mineral injections and boluses, and
• non-chelated in-feed minerals.

10.13.30

With our permission, you may use the substances listed in standard 10.13.31 for the health and welfare of your stock, provided that:

• you can show by forage or soil analysis that your home grown feeds are deficient, or
• you can show with blood analysis or details of previous problems that your stock are deficient
• the products you use target the deficiency as closely as possible, and
• you record details of their use in your livestock management plan.

10.13.31 | Revised
With our permission you may use the following substances subject to the conditions in standard 10.13.30:
• chelated trace elements, but only when you can justify that the unchelated form is not suitable (chelated trace elements by-pass the normal rumen function and, if continually fed, can be a form of growth enhancer)
• food additives and in-feed medication, but only where there is a recognised need and when you do not use them routinely, and
• synthetic vitamins A, D and E for herbivores.

10.13.32 | New
With our permission you may use enzymes in pig and poultry diets for a limited time. You must be able to demonstrate that their diet is not meeting their nutritional needs and that it will affect their well-being unless addressed.

10.13.33
With our permission, in exceptional circumstances, you may feed non-food ingredients intended to stimulate growth or production (such as antibiotics and probiotics) to your livestock but only for therapeutic reasons.

10.13.34 | Revised
You must only use supplements that contain ingredients allowed in our standards. For example, you must not use:
• synthetic amino acids
• mineral licks containing flavour enhancers, non-mineral additives, preservatives or urea
• concentrated vitamins and minerals used to achieve early maturity or high levels of production
• calcified seaweed.

Feedmills and blenders

10.13.35
To produce compounds or blended feeds suitable for organic livestock, you must:
• be certified with us for these feeds
• comply with the relevant sections of chapters 2, 10, 40 and 41 of these standards
• use organic agricultural ingredients when they are available, and
• only use the non-agricultural ingredients that we allow in these standards.

10.13.36
You may only use a non-organic ingredient if you:
• cannot source 100% organic ingredients
• complete and send us a ‘feedmill application to use non-organic ingredients’ form (please contact us for a copy)
• demonstrate you have tried to source that ingredient as organic, recording who you have contacted
• cannot use a suitable, alternative organic ingredient, and
• obtain our permission before you use that non-organic ingredient.

Note – these permissions will normally be for three months at a time. If you are replenishing your stocks within this time, you must source the ingredient as organic if it has become available.

10.14 Handling and transporting livestock

10.14.1
Your farm facilities should be properly designed for handling the types of livestock you have on your farm.

10.14.2
By carefully handling your animals during transport you will reduce the risk of fatigue, pain and injury. You will also reduce the risk of affecting the quality of the meat at slaughter.

10.14.3
The welfare of animals in transport is the responsibility of both those sending and receiving the livestock. You must take corrective action if problems occur during transport.

10.14.4
At all times you must handle, or make sure others handle, your animals:
• with proper care and concern for their welfare, observing all relevant legislation and government welfare codes.
• in conditions that minimise stress and avoid the chance of injuring them
• using experienced staff in a relaxed way
• in handling facilities that are correctly designed and maintained
• without unnecessary physical force
• without using any type of electrical stimulation such as electric goads, and
• within their own social groups.

10.14.5

You must **not** mix organic and non-organic livestock unless:

• they are from the same social group, and
• you can identify individuals and their organic status.

10.14.6

When transporting your animals you should:

• use suitable transport
• minimise how often you transport them
• liaise with your haulier and consignee on collection and arrival times
• ensure their journey time is kept to a minimum
• use the nearest licensed abattoir, and
• use gates to restrict the movement of animals if the vehicle is only part full.

10.14.7

During transport you must ensure that:

• each load of animals is accompanied by a livestock transfer document (only when changing ownership)
• each load of animals is accompanied by a livestock to slaughter form (only when going for slaughter)
• the vehicles are properly ventilated throughout the journey
• you only transport fit animals, unless under the supervision of a vet
• you present your animals in a clean and rested condition
• journey time between your farm and your livestock’s destination is no longer than eight hours, from the start of loading to the end of unloading, and
• you get our permission if the journey time will be more than eight hours.

Note – we will normally only give permission to transport chicks for up to 24 hours if in temperature-controlled vehicles.

10.14.8

You must make sure that vehicles used are:

• suitable for transporting your animals
• properly equipped
• maintained in a clean and hygienic condition
• cleaned and disinfected between loads of animals from different holdings, and
• driven with care, avoiding high speeds, sudden starting or stopping or rapid cornering.

10.14.9

You must not:

• load vehicles so that animals are overcrowded
• tranquillise any of your livestock before or during transport, or
• export your organic livestock for slaughter.

10.14.10

When your livestock arrive at the abattoir you must make sure:

• you give a copy of the livestock to slaughter form to the abattoir (you can get these forms from us)
• if they have to wait for six hours or more before they are slaughtered, they have bedding from arrival, enough space to lie down, and access to clean water, and
• if they have to wait for 12 hours or more before they are slaughtered they also have organic feed.

10.14.11

You should not send dirty animals for slaughter. You should refer to the Meat Hygiene Service guidelines on dirty animals. Call 01904 455501 or see www.food.gov.uk/enforcement/meathyg/mhservice

10.14.12

If you cannot clean animals before they leave for slaughter (for example if they are fractious) you must ensure that the abattoir will clean them on arrival.

10.15 Identification

10.15.1

You must identify your livestock at all stages of their production, preparation, transport and marketing. You must identify them:

• individually when it is a statutory requirement
• individually for deer unless they are in a closed production environment, and
• by batch in the case of all other animals.

**10.15.2**

To identify your livestock you may use:

• tagging
• tattooing, or
• freeze branding.

**10.15.3**

You may only use ear notching:

• to identify pedigree animals, or
• to identify sheep on common land where ear notching is required in the common grazing regulations.

Note – you must still ear tag your sheep as this is a statutory requirement.
11

Beef and dairy cattle
11.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management

**Beef and dairy cattle**

11.1 Converting cattle
11.2 Welfare of cattle
11.3 Feeding cattle
11.4 Housing cattle
11.5 Rearing calves
11.6 Transporting and handling cattle
11.1 Converting cattle

11.1.1 Revised
To sell milk as organic you must have organic land and:

• have fed your dairy cows to full organic standards for at least six months
• have kept your dairy cows to the full health and welfare standards for at least nine months
• have agreed your feed plan with us as part of your livestock management plan, and
• had organic milk added to your trading schedule.

Note – for general conversion requirements please refer to sections 10.4, ‘Managing your herd or flock through conversion’, 10.5, ‘Simultaneous conversion’ and 10.6, ‘Bringing in livestock’.

11.1.2
For your calves to be eligible for organic status you must have kept their dams to full organic standards for at least 12 weeks before calving.

11.2 Welfare of cattle

11.2.1
You should where possible:

• calve outdoors, and
• use group housing, when cattle are housed, in open-fronted straw yards.

11.2.2
After weaning you should graze your youngstock as much as possible for the time of year.

11.2.3
You must not:

• purchase calves from livestock markets that are not licensed with an organic certification body
• sell your calves under one month old either through livestock markets or abroad
• sell your calves into non-welfare friendly or intensive systems, or
• bring in beef calves from non-organic herds to suckle on organic suckler cows. This is parallel production.

Note – please see section 11.5 for standards on rearing calves.
11.3 Feeding cattle

11.3.1
You should base your cattle’s diet on organic grass/clover or conserved forage and roots supplemented with moderate amounts of cereals and/or pulses where necessary.

11.3.2
After weaning you must make sure that at least 60% (on a daily dry matter basis) of your cattle’s diet consists of fresh or dried fodder, roughage or silage.

Note – you can use the table below as a guide to help you calculate your cattle feed allowances. This is only a guide. Some animals may eat more or less during different stages of their lives, especially pre- and post-calving.

Guidance table on daily dry matter intakes (DMI)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lactating dairy cows</th>
<th>Beef cattle, dairy youngstock and dry cows:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight (kg)</td>
<td>Daily DMI @ 3% of liveweight (kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>18.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>650</td>
<td>19.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>22.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.3.3
You must allow your cattle to graze fresh forage throughout the grazing season. The total grazing area must be at least 0.27 ha (0.66 acres) per cow per grazing season. This area can be part of a grazing rotation.

11.3.4
You may buffer feed your cattle but they must have access to the minimum grazing area in standard 11.3.3.
11.3.5

You must not:

• feed rations that are high in energy and low in fibre or those that contain over 40% concentrates (dry matter percentage of the total diet), for example barley beef systems, or
• zero graze your animals.

11.4 Housing cattle

11.4.1

Your cattle housing must have a comfortable clean and dry lying/resting area which must be solid and not more than 50% slatted.

11.4.2

When housing your cattle you must:

• house animals of a similar size together to reduce the risk of bullying
• house any aggressive cattle separately, and
• provide extra lying and feeding space if you are keeping horned cattle together.

11.4.3

If you house any breeding bulls over one year old you must:

• keep them in sight of other animals, and
• give them access to:
  i. pasture, or
  ii. an open-air run of at least 30m².

11.4.4

You may finish your cattle in well-bedded spacious yards provided this period is less than one fifth of their lifetime and is no more than three months. This is in addition to any normal winter housing period.

11.4.5

You may use stalls or cubicles in your housing provided that:

• your animals have free access to them
• they have an adequate lungeing area
• they are clean, dry and well-bedded, and
• there are 5% more cubicles than cattle, unless we agree otherwise.
11.4.6

If you have concrete-based cubicles you should fit them with rubber mats, mattresses, water beds or other cushioned materials and provide an additional layer of bedding.

11.4.7

If you have concrete-based cubicles and cannot fit them with suitable cushioned materials you must provide substantial bedding.

11.4.8

When housing your animals you must give them the following space:

Minimum housing space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Live weight (kg)</th>
<th>Lying area or indoor area (m² per head)</th>
<th>Additional space required (m² per head)</th>
<th>Total (m² per head)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breeding and fattening cattle:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up to 100</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up to 200</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up to 350</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>7.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350–500</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above 500</td>
<td>1m²/100kg</td>
<td>0.75m²/100kg</td>
<td>1.75m²/100kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy cows:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up to 600kg</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 600kg</td>
<td>1m²/100kg</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This is the minimum lying area (under cover and bedded) for loose housing or the total indoor area for cubicle housing

† This additional area can be indoors or outdoors

Note – the size of the cubicles on your holding must be suitable for your cattle. You should consider the largest cows in the herd when calculating cubicle housing. The following table provides guidelines for cubicle dimensions (taken from the British Standards Institute, 1990, BS5502).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cow weight (kg)</th>
<th>Cubicle length including kerb (m)</th>
<th>Cubicle clear width between partitions (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>350–500</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>1.00–1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500–600</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>1.10–1.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600–700</td>
<td>2.30</td>
<td>1.15–1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700–800</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>1.20–1.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**11.4.9 | Revised**

With our approval, you may use woodchip corrals and stand-off pads for your cattle over winter or for temporary periods, but you must make sure:

- they are lined for effluent collection
- they have collection facilities sufficient to store the effluent produced over the period of use
- that the stocking density for your animals complies with the total $m^2$ per head in standard 11.4.8, and
- they have sufficient shelter as in standard 10.11.2.

Note – we strongly advise that you consult your local environmental agency and planning office for advice on compliance.

**11.5 Rearing calves**

**11.5.1**

Ideally dams should rear their own calves. The calves will then build a natural vigour and resistance to infection.

**11.5.2**

You should allow calves to wean naturally.

**11.5.3**

When natural weaning is not possible you should only wean calves when they are taking enough solid food to satisfy their full nutritional needs.

**11.5.4**

Your calves’ diet should consist of:

- colostrum, preferably suckled within six hours of birth
- organic whole milk, suckled from the dam or nurse cow until weaning, and
- suckled milk once or twice a day, beyond 12 weeks.

**11.5.5**

You must **not** wean your calves before they are 12 weeks old.

**11.5.6**

Your calves’ diet must comply with standard 10.13.10.
11.5.7 | Revised

The milk you feed to your calves must be:

• at least 51% fresh, whole, organic milk (preferably maternal milk), for at least 12 weeks, and
• no more than 49% organic dried milk, skimmed milk powder or milk replacer which must be free from additives such as antibiotics, growth promoters or ingredients of animal origin (except milk derivatives).

11.5.8 | Revised

In an emergency you may feed non-organic milk replacer to calves until they are 72 hours old. However, if you feed them like this any longer they will lose their organic status.

11.5.9

You must **not** feed your calves milk taken from dairy cows during the statutory withdrawal period for antibiotic treatments.

11.5.10

You may use artificial teat or bucket rearing with organic whole milk, but you should:

• take care during their pre-ruminating phase to ensure they are digesting it effectively, and
• feed the milk at the right temperature.

11.5.11

You should dispose of milk showing signs of mastitis or colostrum appropriately according to the Defra Code of Good Agricultural Practice for the Protection of Water.

11.5.12

If you house your calves you must give them access to good quality straw, hay or silage and fresh clean water.

11.5.13

If you need to disbud or castrate your calves, you must justify the need in your animal health plan and detail how you will do it, including the use of anaesthetic.

11.5.14

If you disbud or castrate your calves, you should do this when they are under two months of age.
11.5.15

You must not:

* disbud calves over two months old, or
* castrate calves over two months old.

Note – only a vet can carry out these procedures on calves over these ages.

11.5.16

You may use rubber rings for castration without anaesthetic only during the first week of life. After this time you must use anaesthetic.

11.5.17 | Revised

With our approval, you may use individual pens for calves:

* up to seven days old, provided that they can see and hear other calves and can get up, lie down and turn around without difficulty, and
* beyond seven days but only with our permission. We will consider individual cases on, for example, animal welfare grounds.

11.5.18

You must not tether calves.

Rearing dairy calves

11.5.19

For your dairy calves, you must, in order of preference:

* rear them on farm, preferably on their dam or on nurse cows
* sell them to other organic producers
* sell them to an organic calf group
* sell them to a non-organic farmer who you know will provide the welfare conditions in standard 11.5.20, or
* sell them (over 12 weeks old) through a certified organic livestock market.

Note – to find organic market outlets and buyers for your organic dairy calves, please contact our food and farming team on 0117 914 2400 or visit the organic market place at www.soilassociation.org/organicmarketplace

11.5.20

If none of the options in 11.5.19 are possible, you should only sell dairy calves where you know their destination provides the following conditions for their welfare:
• the ability to see and hear other calves or cattle
• the ability to turn through 360 degrees
• sufficient bedding for dry, lying areas, and
• access to solid food, including hay or silage.

Note – this is to prevent the sale of organic calves into continental-style veal systems.

11.5.21
If you sell calves to non-organic systems, you should ensure that the calves are transported according to our standards (section 10.14).

11.5.22
By 1 January 2010 you must have a plan in place, including a realistic end date, to prevent killing healthy dairy calves. You must then implement this plan.

11.6 Transporting and handling cattle

11.6.1
If you need to use races or hurdles to move your cattle they should be of solid construction.

11.6.2
You should not send in-calf cows to slaughter.

11.6.3
You may send cows up to six months in-calf to slaughter but if you do, you must inform the abattoir of the pregnancy.

11.6.4
You must not send cows over six months pregnant to slaughter, except as part of a compulsory slaughter scheme.

11.6.5
If you are selling lactating dairy cows, you must milk them at their normal times.

Note – leaving lactating cows unmilked for extended periods causes them pain and discomfort.
Sheep and goats
12.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management

Sheep and goats

12.1 Converting sheep and goats
12.2 Welfare of sheep and goats
12.3 Feeding sheep and goats
12.4 Housing sheep and goats
12.5 Transporting and handling sheep and goats
12.1 Converting sheep and goats

12.1.1 If you want to sell any products from your sheep or goats as organic you must have your feed plan agreed with us as part of your livestock management plan.

12.1.2 Revised

For the offspring of your ewes and goats to be eligible for organic status:

- your ewes and goats must be mated on organic land
- the ewes or goats must be managed to full organic standards from mating, and
- you must manage the offspring to full organic standards throughout their lives.

With our permission, you may mate individual animals on non-organic land.

12.1.3 You must keep replacement ewes to full organic standards from the time you bring them onto your organic holding.

12.1.4 You must not sell any of your converted breeding stock or non-organic replacements as organic.

12.1.5 You may sell the fleece of your sheep and goats as organic after you have organic land and you have:

- kept the sheep and goats to full organic standards for at least 12 months before shearing
- allowed a period of three months (or three times the legal withdrawal period, whichever is greater) between the last treatment of the animals with an external veterinary treatment and shearing, and
- had organic wool added to your trading schedule.

Note – to meet our textile standards, shorn organic wool must not contain pesticide residues, including those used as veterinary treatments, of more than 0.5mg/kg. If you treat your sheep with an external veterinary treatment the wool may not meet these standards. Synthetic pyrethroid treatments used up to 12 months before shearing are likely to result in residues over 0.5mg/kg.
12.1.6
For dairy sheep and goats, you can sell their milk as organic after you have organic land and you have:

- kept the sheep and goats to full organic standards for at least six months, and
- had organic milk added to your trading schedule.

Note – for general conversion requirements please refer to sections 10.4, ‘Managing your herd or flock through conversion’, 10.5, ‘Simultaneous conversion’ and 10.6, ‘Bringing in livestock’.

12.2 Welfare of sheep and goats

12.2.1 | Revised
Where you practise tail docking or castration for welfare reasons you must justify the need in your animal health plan and detail how you will do it. You may use the following methods:

- rubber rings, without anaesthetic during the first week of life, with anaesthetic after this time
- burdizzo method up to six weeks old and with anaesthetic, and
- a hot iron between three and six weeks old and with anaesthetic.

12.2.2
You must not cut or grind the teeth of your sheep or goats.

12.3 Feeding sheep and goats

12.3.1
Your lambs’ and kids’ diet must comply with standard 10.13.10.

12.3.2 | Revised
The milk you feed to your lambs and kids must be:

- at least 51% fresh, whole, organic milk (preferably maternal milk), for at least 45 days, and
- no more than 49% organic dried milk, skimmed milk powder or milk replacer which must be free from additives such as antibiotics, growth promoters or ingredients of animal origin (except milk derivatives).
12.3.3 Revised
In an emergency you may feed non-organic milk replacer to lambs and kids until they are 72 hours old. However, if you feed them like this any longer they will lose their organic status.

12.3.4
You may use:

- goats’ colostrum for orphaned lambs, or
- cows’ colostrum for orphan lambs or kids.

Note – cows’ colostrum should be tested for antibodies before you feed it to your lambs as it may be harmful to them.

12.3.5
After weaning you should graze your kids and lambs as much as possible for the time of year

12.3.6
After weaning you must make sure that at least 60% (on a daily dry matter basis) of your sheep and goats’ diet consists of fresh or dried fodder, roughage or silage.

Note – you can use the table below as a guide to help you calculate your sheep or goats’ feed allowances. This is only a guide. Some animals may eat more or less during different stages of their lives, especially pre- and post-lambing/kidding.

**Guidance table on daily dry matter intakes (DMI)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sheep/goat weight (kg) (all groups)</th>
<th>Daily DMI @ 2.5% of live weight (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.4 Housing sheep and goats

12.4.1
You may house your sheep or goats in the winter but their housing must have:

- a comfortable clean and dry lying/resting area of solid construction (not slatted)
- a smooth but not a slippery floor
- at least 50cm of trough space per heavily pregnant ewe/goat for concentrate feeding
- no more than 40 ewes/goats per pen if housed throughout the winter
- no more than 100 ewes/goats per pen if only housed for lambing/kidding
- good ventilation without excess draughts, and
- the following minimum lying area:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minimum lying area</th>
<th>m² per head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i. Sheep and goats</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii. Lambs and kids</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii. Ewe/nanny goats with one lamb/kid</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv. Additional lamb/kid with each family group</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.4.2
You must **not** house your sheep or goats permanently indoors.

12.4.3
You may shear sheep in the winter only when they are housed and you must:

- house them for a minimum of six weeks between shearing and turnout
- only turn out in favourable weather conditions, and
- use appropriate sheep shearing combs that leave a covering of wool on the sheep.

12.5 Transporting and handling sheep and goats

12.5.1
If you need to use races or hurdles to move your sheep or goats, they should be of solid construction.
13

Pigs
13.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management

Pigs

13.1 Converting pigs
13.2 Welfare of pigs
13.3 Outdoor management of pigs
13.4 Feeding pigs
13.5 Housing pigs
13.6 Farrowing and weaning pigs
13.7 Transporting and handling pigs
13.1 Converting pigs

13.1.1
You should choose a breed of pig that is suitable to thrive under organic free range conditions.

13.1.2 Revised
With our approval, you may start organic pig production on land in its second year of conversion if at least 24 months has passed since you used inputs we do not allow on the land.

13.1.3
For your piglets to have organic status:

- the sows must be mated on an organic holding
- you must manage the sows to full organic standards from mating, and
- you must manage the piglets to full organic standards for all of their lives.

With our permission, you may mate individual animals on non-organic land

Note – for general conversion requirements please refer to sections 10.4, ‘Managing your herd or flock through conversion’, 10.5, ‘Simultaneous conversion’ and 10.6, ‘Bringing in livestock’.

13.2 Welfare of pigs

13.2.1
You must make sure your pigs are checked at least twice a day by a suitably trained or experienced person.

13.2.2 Revised
You must **not** carry out, or allow anyone else to carry out, the following procedures on your pigs:

- tail docking
- teeth cutting or grinding
- castration
- ringing of any of your pigs, or
- prophylactic use of iron injections.
13.3 Outdoor management of pigs

13.3.1 Your pig operation must:

- be based on free range (preferably a total free range) system, and
- be on a site with suitable soil type, climate and landscape which, together with the appropriate stocking density, will prevent:
  
  i. nitrogen leaching
  ii. erosion, and
  iii. internal parasites and disease.

We will consider your livestock management plan against these criteria.

13.3.2 You must:

- give your pigs direct access to the soil and growing green food
- provide wallows and/or shade over the summer months, and
- minimise stress through good handling systems.

13.3.3 You should use a rotational grazing system.

13.3.4 You should not:

- return your pigs to the same land more than once in four years,
or
- keep your pigs on the same land for more than six months.

13.3.5 Revised

You should not exceed the following stocking densities which are the equivalent (in production of manure) to 170kg nitrogen per hectare per year:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of animals equivalent</th>
<th>$170kg N/ha/year</th>
<th>$kg N produced/pig/year</th>
<th>$kg N produced/pig/week</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baconer</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>0.204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutter (35–85kg)</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>0.182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grower (18–35kg)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>0.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaner (7–18kg)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>0.054</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sow and litter (to 7kg)*</td>
<td>09</td>
<td>18.9</td>
<td>0.363</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*based on 18 pigs/sow/year finished at 26 weeks of age
13.4 Feeding pigs

13.4.1

Your pigs’ diet must comply with the 10% annual and 25% daily limits for non-organic feeds.

Note – please refer to section 10.13 for more information on feeding your pigs.

Note – you can use the table below as a guide to help you calculate your pigs’ feed allowances. This is only a guide. Some animals may eat more or less during different stages of their lives, especially pre- and post-farrowing.

**Guidance table on daily dry matter intake (DMI)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pig</th>
<th>Average daily DMI (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sow + six piglets</td>
<td>4.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(plus each extra piglet)</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gilts</td>
<td>2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaners at nine weeks</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaners at 25 weeks</td>
<td>2.65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.4.2
You must feed your piglets milk for a minimum of 40 days and it must be:
• at least 51% fresh, whole, organic milk (preferably maternal milk), and
• no more than 49% dried milk, skimmed milk powder or milk replacer
  which must be free from substances listed in 13.4.4.

Note – you can calculate these amounts over the whole of the milk feeding period.

13.4.3
In an emergency you may feed non-organic milk replacer to piglets, over the
amounts we normally allow, until they are 72 hours old. However, if you feed
them like this any longer they will lose their organic status.

13.4.4
You must **not** feed your piglets dried milk, skimmed milk powder or milk
replacer containing additives such as antibiotics, growth promoters or
ingredients of animal origin (except milk derivatives).

13.4.5
Your pigs’ diets must contain roughage, fresh or dried fodder, or silage as
part of their daily ration.

13.4.6
You must **not** give your pigs antibiotics, copper diet supplements or
probiotics to promote their growth.

13.5 Housing pigs

13.5.1 **Revised**
You may only house your pigs indoors:
• in the final fattening stage but for no more than one fifth of their lives
• in extreme weather conditions, or
• at other times, with our approval, but only when it is of benefit to their welfare.

13.5.2 **Revised**
In addition to the general livestock housing standards your indoor housing
must always provide:
• access to an outside run which allows your pigs to dung and root, and
• enough trough space for all your pigs to feed at once if you do not feed them ad lib.

13.5.3

If you house pigs indoors you must:

• provide individual housing for sows with piglets, and
• create stable, evenly sized groups for fattening pigs, gilts and sows.

13.5.4

Drinkers must have a high enough flow rate to meet the needs of each class of pig and there must be no more than:

• 10 pigs per nipple drinker
• 15 pigs per bowl, or
• 10 pigs per 30cm of trough.

13.5.5

You must include in your management plan details of how you will:

• manage and protect thin or bullied pigs, and
• avoid bullying in group-housed dry sows or gilts, particularly at feeding.

13.5.6 | Revised

You must have at least the following housing dimensions:

**Breeding pigs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Minimum indoor area (m²/head)</th>
<th>Minimum outdoor exercise area (m²/head)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sows</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boars</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrowing sows with piglets up to 40 days</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Minimum lying area – covered and bedded for outside shelters (m²/head)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Minimum indoor area (m²/head)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Farrowing sows with piglets up to 28 days</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry sows and boars</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Fattening pigs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight Range</th>
<th>Total indoor area (m²/head)</th>
<th>Minimum outdoor exercise area (m²/head)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 30kg (and over 40 days)</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 50kg</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 85kg</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 110kg</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Minimum lying area – covered and bedded for outside shelters (m²/head)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight Range</th>
<th>Minimum Lying Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 30kg (and over 40 days)</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 50kg</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 85kg</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Up to 110kg</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13.6 Farrowing and weaning pigs

#### 13.6.1

You should:

- settle sows into farrowing accommodation well before piglets are due to be born
- use a farrowing arc of around 2.5m x 2m
- use straw bedding (suitable temperatures are kept in the nest by using straw)
- wean your piglets at eight weeks old or later, and
- group your pigs by size and sex at weaning.

#### 13.6.2

You must use service pens with at least 10.5m² per head.

#### 13.6.3

You may only wean your piglets provided they are taking enough solid food.

#### 13.6.4

You must **not**:

- use farrowing crates
- withhold food or water for drying off sows, or
- wean your piglets when they are less than 40 days old.
13.7 Transporting and handling pigs

13.7.1 You should use driving boards to move your pigs in the required direction.

13.7.2 If you need to use races or hurdles to move your pigs they should be of solid construction.
Deer
14.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management

Deer

14.1 Species and origins of stock (including parkland managed)
14.2 Converting deer
14.3 Deer health and welfare
14.4 Managing the grazing of deer
14.5 Feeding deer
14.6 Housing deer
14.7 Handling and transporting deer
14.8 Slaughtering deer
14.1 Species and origins of stock (including parkland managed)

14.1.1 You may only use:
- red deer, or
- fallow deer.

Note – you can use park deer if you can meet these standards.

14.1.2 Your stock must be domesticated.

Note – domesticated means deer that are farm bred and reared for at least four generations.

14.1.3 You must **not** use:
- wild deer, or
- other deer species, unless we develop standards for these.

14.2 Converting deer

14.2.1 For the offspring of your deer to be eligible for organic status:
- your deer must be mated on organic land
- you must manage the deer to full organic standards from mating, and
- you must manage the offspring to full organic standards throughout their lives.

With our permission, you may be allowed to mate individual animals on non-organic land.

14.2.2 You must keep replacement deer to full organic standards from the time you bring them onto your organic holding.

Note – for general conversion requirements please refer to sections 10.4, ‘Managing your herd or flock through conversion’, 10.5, ‘Simultaneous conversion’ and 10.6, ‘Bringing in livestock’.
14.2.3

You must not sell any of your non-organic replacements as organic.

14.3 Deer health and welfare

14.3.1

You must make sure that:

• all your staff have access to your up-to-date herd health plan
• your management of the farm guarantees the safety and welfare of your stock, stockmen and the general public, particularly during the rut and calving seasons, and
• you have provided facilities on your farm for the humane slaughter of both emergency and casualty animals. You must use a named, trained and competent member of staff, a licensed slaughterman or a veterinary surgeon.

14.3.2

You must not:

• remove hard antlers without our permission, which we will only give for reasons of stock and/or handler safety and welfare
• remove antlers in velvet
• use artificial insemination (AI) or embryo transfer
• castrate stock
• disbud stock, or
• use immobilon on deer intended for human consumption.

14.4 Managing the grazing of deer

14.4.1

You should:

• use extensive grazing
• provide all year round grazing, without compromising herd welfare and sward condition, and
• use non-electrified double fencing to separate stags where you cannot avoid putting them in adjacent fields.

14.4.2

You must:

• manage your deer as a herd
• keep to a stocking density that:
  i. is appropriate for herd behaviour
  ii. allows effective parasite control, and
  iii. does not exceed five hinds, plus followers, per hectare.

14.4.3

You must:

• make your tracks and gateways at least 3.5m wide to allow stock to move freely through them
• have perimeter fencing at least 1.8m high to prevent escape
• use fencing that is visible to the stock to prevent injury
• provide shelter from harsh weather conditions
• provide sufficient shade
• provide wallows, and
• provide tree cover or rubbing posts.

14.4.4

You must **not**:

• have jump-in points, or
• keep stags in adjacent fields during the rut.

14.4.5

You must **not** use fields less than two hectares for grazing, except during collection or convalescence, unless we have agreed this as part of your livestock management plan.

---

14.5 Feeding deer

14.5.1

You must provide your deer with adequate feeding facilities which include:

• access to clean fresh water at all times
• good-quality feed which meets their nutritional and seasonal requirements particularly to ensure good body condition before winter, and
• adequate trough space for all deer to feed at the same time. For each deer, this means at least the following trough space:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Red deer</th>
<th>Fallow deer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hinds/yearlings</td>
<td>55 cm</td>
<td>28 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaned calves</td>
<td>33 cm</td>
<td>17 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stags</td>
<td>75 cm</td>
<td>38 cm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14.5.2

You must provide your deer with adequate feed and detail the ingredients and quantities you feed to each group of deer in your livestock management plan.

Note – you can use the table below to make sure you feed an adequate daily dry matter intake and to calculate the various feed allowances. This is only a guide. Some animals may eat more or less during different stages of their lives, especially pre- and post-calving.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Red deer</th>
<th>Average daily DMI (kg)</th>
<th>Fallow deer</th>
<th>Average daily DMI (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mature stag</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>Mature buck</td>
<td>1.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mature hind</td>
<td>2.15</td>
<td>Mature doe</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yearling</td>
<td>2.35</td>
<td>Yearling</td>
<td>1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaned calf</td>
<td>1.65</td>
<td>Weaned fawn</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.5.3

Ideally dams should rear their own calves. The calves will then build a natural vigour and resistance to infection.

14.5.4

You should allow calves to wean naturally.

14.5.5

When natural weaning is not possible you should only wean calves when they are taking enough solid food to satisfy their full nutritional needs.

14.5.6

Your calves’ diet should consist of:

- colostrum, preferably suckled within six hours of birth
- organic whole milk, suckled from the dam until weaning, and
- suckled milk once or twice a day, beyond 12 weeks.

14.5.7

Your calves’ diet must comply with the standard 10.13.10.

14.5.8 | Revised

The milk you feed to your calves must be:

- at least 51% fresh, whole, organic milk, preferably maternal milk, for at least three months, and
• no more than 49% organic dried milk, skimmed milk powder or milk replacer which must be free from additives such as antibiotics, growth promoters or ingredients of animal origin (except milk derivatives).

14.5.9 | Revised
In an emergency you may feed non-organic milk replacer to calves until they are 72 hours old. However, if you feed them like this any longer they will lose their organic status.

14.5.10
You must not wean calves before they are 12 weeks of age.

Note – if your calves reach 35kg before 12 weeks and you wish to wean them early, you must ask us for permission.

14.6 Housing deer

14.6.1
You should:

• provide housing with outside runs, and
• ensure that housed deer can see farm activities or other groups of deer.

14.6.2
You may house:

• stock in severe weather conditions
• sick or injured stock
• calves during the winter period after weaning, and
• stock for the final finishing phase, for a maximum of two weeks prior to slaughter.

14.6.3
You may house adult deer through the winter if it is a benefit to their health and welfare and we have approved it as part of your livestock management plan.

14.6.4
You must ensure that your deer housing provides:

• housing for groups of similar ages
• at least five square metres lying area for each 100kg live weight
• a safe environment to prevent injury to the deer
• adequate light, ventilation and no draughts
• facilities for rearing orphan calves, and
• refuge for bullied deer, using barriers or partitions with a minimum height of 2m.

### 14.6.5
You must remove bullied deer to a different pen, and if possible identify and remove the aggressor.

### 14.6.6 | Revised
You must obtain approval from us before you house:

• mature stags, and
• finishing deer during the winter period.

## 14.7 Handling and transporting deer

### 14.7.1
When you handle your deer you should use appropriate low-level lighting to reduce stress.

### 14.7.2
You may:

• use short-term holding pens, with at least 0.6m² for each 100kg of live weight
• assist with the calving of your hinds, and
• use darting when needed.

### 14.7.3
When handling your animals, you should make sure that they are always in sight of the handlers and other deer.

### 14.7.4
When handling your animals you must:

• familiarise them with your handling facilities with regular use
• keep separation of individuals to a minimum, and
• make sure your handlers are experienced and have received suitable training.
14.7.5
Your handling facilities must be good enough to make sure your stock remain safe and well.

14.7.6
Barriers must be at least 2m high. The last 20m of the handling race must be solid boarding or close mesh (less than 6cm) and covered in hessian or a similar material.

14.7.7
You must not transport deer for more than eight hours, including the loading and unloading time.

Note – we may give permission to extend this in exceptional circumstances.

14.7.8
You must keep any transportation of your deer to an absolute minimum. If you do need to transport them you must use trained and competent people.

14.7.9
When transporting deer you (or the responsible person) must:

• allow the deer access to food at least four hours before the journey
• provide the deer with fresh, clean water directly before and after the journey
• allow any stressed deer to rest for up to one hour before loading or unloading them, and
• provide emergency facilities to cool down heat stressed deer.

14.7.10
You must ensure that the vehicle has:

• ramps with a slope of no more than 20 degrees
• appropriate ventilation
• sufficient bedding to prevent your deer slipping
• a ceiling height that allows the deer to stand normally
• pen divisions that are solid and at least 2m high, and
• no sharp edges or projecting parts that could cause injury.

14.7.11
When transporting deer you must:

• individually pen any irritable or hard-antlered stags
• separate groups of deer based on their previous groups, size and sex
• regularly inspect the deer
• ensure a stocking density of at least 0.6m² for each 100kg liveweight, and
• report any injuries or deaths to the driver, abattoir manager and farmer, and record them in the farm records.

14.7.12
If you keep your deer in lairage during transit, you must make sure:
• there is enough space for the number of deer held
• there is enough shelter and bedded lying area for the number of deer held
• they have easy access to food and water
• the facilities are kept clean, and
• there are suitable handling, loading and unloading facilities.

14.7.13
Whilst the deer are in lairage you must:
• keep them in their social groups, and
• ensure they are inspected regularly, at least every eight hours, by a competent deer handler.

14.7.14
You must **not**:
• use goads, or
• transport the deer in the same vehicle as other species.

14.7.15
You must **not** transport any of the following to an abattoir:
• deer under five months old
• stags in hard antler, unless you individually pen them
• hinds more than five months in-calf
• sick, injured or diseased deer
• males over 24 months old during the rut, or
• hinds, with calves under three months old at foot.

| 14.8 | Slaughtering deer |

14.8.1
You must:
• make sure you meet the terms of the Welfare of Animals (Slaughter and Killing) Regulation 1995
• design and manage your slaughter system to make sure you do not cause your deer unnecessary distress or discomfort
• keep the pre-slaughter handling of the deer to a minimum
• only use thoroughly trained and competent people, and
• only slaughter your deer using the methods noted below.

14.8.2
You should where possible shoot the deer in the field, in the brain at close range using a trained and experienced marksman.

14.8.3
You should:
• shoot in an appropriate-sized field, avoiding small paddocks
• shoot from an elevated position
• bleed out straight after shooting, and
• take care not to injure other deer when shooting.

14.8.4
When you slaughter deer in the field you must:
• use a suitable high velocity rifle and ammunition which meets the legal requirements of the Deer Act 1991
• provide a safe backstop for the bullet
• take sensible precautions to ensure public safety, and
• if the kill is not clean, kill the wounded deer straight away, and only continue the cull when the remaining deer are calm.

14.8.5
You must not shoot deer from greater than 40 metres, unless there are exceptional circumstances.

14.8.6
You may use captive bolt stunning, using your own licensed farmed game handling and processing facility, provided that:
• your deer are restrained in a drop floor crush, hydraulic crush or suitable pen
• the stun to stick interval is no more than 60 seconds, and
• after incision of the blood vessels, you perform no further dressing procedures on the deer for at least 20 seconds and until all brain stem reflexes have ceased.
14.8.7
You may use a specialised licensed abattoir with staff who are trained and experienced with deer, provided that:

- your deer are slaughtered as soon as possible on arrival, or are rested in a lairage designed for, and only being used by, deer
- your deer are not brought close to any other species in the lairage or abattoir before stunning
- walls, doors, passages and pens are smooth, without projections that could injure your deer, and are high enough to discourage them from escaping
- your deer are restrained in a drop floor crush, hydraulic crush or suitable pen
- the time that the last deer in a batch is left is kept to an absolute minimum
- the stun to stick interval is no more than 60 seconds, and
- after incision of the blood vessels, no further dressing procedures are performed on the deer for at least 20 seconds and until all brain stem reflexes have ceased.
15

Beekeeping
15.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 40. Processes in the chain between farm and consumer
Chapter 41. Manufacturing

Beekeeping

15.1 Bees on your farm
15.2 Keeping bees healthy
15.3 Feeding bees
15.4 Siting and managing your apiaries
15.1 Bees on your farm

15.1.1 Beekeeping plays an important role in the countryside through pollination. Bees contribute to:

• biodiversity of wild plant species, and
• agricultural, horticultural and forestry production.

15.1.2 The organic status of your bee products depends on:

• your hive management and the treatments you apply
• the quality of the foraging area, and
• how you harvest, process and store the honey.

15.1.3 You can sell bees and bee products as organic when:

• you have kept them to full organic standards for at least 12 months, and
• we have added organic bees and bee products to your trading schedule.

Origin of your bees and conversion

15.1.4 You must choose a breed of bee that is:

• able to adapt to local conditions
• vigorous, and
• resistant to disease

Note – we would expect this to be a European breed or local ecotype of *Apis mellifera* or a native species or breed from the area where you are producing the honey.

15.1.5 You must establish your organic apiaries and increase your stocks by dividing your own colonies or bringing in colonies or swarms from other organic units.

15.1.6 You may convert your existing hives, but you must keep your bees to these standards for at least 12 months before you can sell any of their products.
as organic. During this time you must replace their comb with organic wax comb or foundation.

### Bringing in non-organic replacements

#### 15.1.7

You may bring in up to 10% non-organic replacements as queen bees and swarms only if you place them in hives with comb or foundation from organic production. These bees will not need to go through a conversion period.

#### 15.1.8

With our permission, you may bring in more than 10% non-organic bees when:

- organic swarms are not available, and
- a high percentage of your bees have died due to health problems or catastrophic circumstances.

You must then keep the bees to full organic standards for 12 months before you can sell any of their products as organic.

### Keeping organic and non-organic bees

#### 15.1.9

If you keep organic and non-organic apiaries in the same area, you must keep them all to these standards.

#### 15.1.10 Revised

With our approval, you may have non-organic apiaries in nearby non-organic areas, but you must manage them to all other aspects of these beekeeping standards.

#### 15.1.11

You must **not** sell products from non-organic apiaries as organic.

### 15.2 Keeping bees healthy

#### 15.2.1

To keep your bees healthy you should select appropriate hardy breeds.
15.2.2

You should encourage resistance to disease and prevent infections by:

- renewing the queens regularly
- carefully inspecting your hives to detect health problems
- controlling the male brood in your hives
- disinfecting materials and equipment regularly
- destroying contaminated material
- regularly renewing beeswax, and
- leaving enough reserves of honey and pollen in your hives.

15.2.3

If, despite taking all preventative measures, your colonies become infected you must:

- treat them immediately, and
- if necessary place the colonies in isolation apiaries.

15.2.4

If you use any veterinary treatments you must:

- make sure their use is allowed by law
- use complementary therapies provided they are effective for the condition you are treating, and
- only use other veterinary treatments, under the responsibility of your vet, if complementary therapies haven’t worked, or are unlikely to prevent your bee colonies being destroyed.

15.2.5

If you treat any colonies with veterinary treatments other than complementary therapies or those we allow against Varroa mite, you must:

- put them into isolation during the treatment period
- replace all the wax with organically produced wax, and
- put the treated colony into a 12 month conversion period, starting from the date of treatment.

15.2.6 | Revised

For the treatment of Varroa destructor, you may destroy the male brood to contain a Varroa infestation. You may use:

- formic acid, lactic acid, acetic acid, oxalic acid
- menthol, thymol, eucalyptol or camphor, and
- veterinary treatments which are compulsory under national or community legislation.
Welfare of bees

15.2.7
You may kill and replace the queen bee.

15.2.8
You must not:
• clip the wings of the queen bee, or
• use artificial insemination.

15.3 | Feeding bees

15.3.1
You must leave your colonies with enough honey and pollen reserves to survive the winter.

15.3.2
You may only artificially feed your bees:
• between the last honey harvest and 15 days before the start of the next nectar or honeydew flow period, or
• when they are in danger of dying due to extreme weather conditions.

15.3.3
You must record the type of feed, dates, quantities and the hives that you artificially feed.

15.3.4
You should use organic honey, preferably from your own unit.

15.3.5 | Revised
If suitable organic honey is not available, such as when it has crystallised you may, with our approval, use:
• organic sugar syrup, or
• organic sugar molasses.

15.3.6
You must not feed your bees artificially with any other products.
15.4 Siting and managing your apiaries

15.4.1 EU member states may have identified regions or areas where organic beekeeping is not practical. You must not site or manage your apiaries in those areas.

15.4.2 When you are siting your apiaries you must:

• place the hives on areas of land certified as organic
• ensure your bees have enough natural nectar, honeydew and pollen sources, and access to water
• make sure nectar and pollen sources, within four miles of your apiary, consist essentially of:
  i. organic crops, and/or
  ii. uncultivated areas with natural vegetation, and
  iii. crops that have only been managed with low environmental impact methods (such as those grown under Regulation (EEC) No. 2078/92) and which cannot significantly affect the organic description of beekeeping, and
• keep them far enough from potential sources of contamination, such as urban centres, motorways, industrial areas, waste dumps and waste incinerators.

15.4.3 Revised With our approval, you may site your apiaries on land that:

• only has naturally occurring vegetation, and
• has not been treated with any substances we do not allow.

15.4.4 You must provide us with:

• evidence that your colonies only have access to land that meets these conditions, and
• a map of a suitable scale that shows the location of your hives and the foraging area of your bees.
15.4.5 | Revised

With our approval, you may reduce the four mile distance if you can demonstrate that the organic integrity of the honey will not be lost. You must provide us with evidence of this, such as:

- a pesticide residue analysis of the honey, and
- details of how the land in the region around the apiary is managed.

15.4.6 | Revised

You must:

- identify each of your hives individually
- inform us when you move your apiaries, within a timescale we have approved and agreed with you, and
- record all details of your hive management operations, such as removing supers and extracting honey.

15.4.7 | Revised

If you have put your hives in areas where flowering is not taking place or if they are dormant, you must keep them on organic land. However you do not need to meet the other conditions of siting apiaries for this time.

Hives and materials you can use

15.4.8 | Revised

Your hives must be made mainly of natural materials which give no risk of contaminating either the environment, the bee products or the bees themselves.

15.4.9

You may only use:

- natural products in the hives, such as propolis, wax and plant oils
- physical cleaning treatments such as steam or direct flame
- appropriate products, listed in standard 4.11.4, 4.11.5, 4.11.6 and 4.11.8, to protect frames, hives and combs against pests, and
- appropriate substances listed in standard 10.12.14, for cleaning and disinfecting your beekeeping materials, buildings, utensils or products.

15.4.10

You must use organic wax:

- for all your new foundations
• to replace combs during a hive’s conversion period, and
• to set up a new hive or installation.

15.4.11 | Revised
With our approval, you may use non-organic wax from cappings if organic wax is not available.

Extraction

15.4.12
You must make sure you adequately extract, process and store your bee products.

15.4.13
You must not:
• use chemical synthetic repellents during honey extraction operations
• destroy bees in the combs to harvest bee products, or
• extract honey from combs that contain brood.
Standards for livestock markets
16.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process

Livestock markets

16.1 Introduction
16.2 General requirements
16.3 Application
16.4 Inspection
16.5 Before the sale
16.6 The sale
16.7 Handling of livestock and animal welfare
16.8 Record keeping
16.9 Delivery, collection and transport
16.1 Introduction

16.1.1
These standards set out the requirements for livestock markets to handle organic livestock. It describes what you must do to ensure the same high standards of animal welfare and traceability that we expect on organic farms.

16.1.2
These standards cover seasonal catalogued sales of:
- organic store sheep and cattle
- organic breeding sheep and cattle, and
- collection centres for finished organic stock being moved out of a region.

16.2 General requirements

16.2.1
You should manage the livestock with special care for their welfare and health. You should also satisfy the animals' behavioural needs, and not merely avoid cruelty. The Farm Animal Welfare Council refers to this as 'positive animal welfare'.

16.2.2
You must nominate a member of staff at the market who:
- is responsible for making sure that these standards are complied with
- must be familiar with organic principles, and
- must be present when we inspect the market.

16.2.3
You must manage the sale of organic livestock so that you:
- can trace organic animals, using documentation, from arrival on the site to leaving (this applies to sold and unsold animals)
- ensure organic animals do not come into contact with non-organic animals
- keep the market premises clean and hygienic, and
- minimise stress and maintain high standards of animal welfare through careful handling and well designed pens and lairage.
16.3 Application

16.3.1 When you apply to us for certification, you must provide a market management plan which must include:

• a diagram of the livestock market premises showing:
  i. loading/unloading areas
  ii. handling areas and facilities, and
  iii. pens and lairage

• a management plan for the organic sale detailing:
  i. how you will keep organic and non-organic animals separate (especially if they use the same loading and unloading bays, corridors, pens, lairage and sale ring)
  ii. how you will provide water to the animals in pens and lairage (see standards 16.6.9 and 16.6.10), and
  iii. how you will minimise the number of times you move livestock around the market premises for the sale.

16.4 Inspection

16.4.1 We will inspect your market premises and operations at the first sale in which there are organic livestock and we will carry out inspections annually thereafter on sale days for as long as we license you.

16.4.2 At the first inspection of the livestock market our inspector will ask you to sign a report to acknowledge actions you need to take to comply with the standards.

16.4.3 In addition to announced annual inspections, we may inspect the market premises without prior warning at any time, for instance if we are concerned that you are not complying with the standards. We may charge you for these inspections, depending upon the outcome of the inspection.
16.5 | Before the sale

16.5.1
You must check the organic status of stock being entered for sale before the sale day. You must ask vendors to send you, with their entry form:

- a livestock transfer document, and
- a trading schedule listing the category of organic stock entered for sale.

Note – we have livestock transfer documents that you can send to your customers with their entry form. Please ask us for copies.

16.5.2
A minimum of one week before the sale date you must send us the sale catalogue (or equivalent) which must list:

- the certification body (for example SA Certification) and the licence number of each vendor, and
- the organic status of the stock entered for sale.

16.6 | The sale

16.6.1
During its life an organic animal should only attend any market once.

16.6.2
The farmer, or another competent person known to the stock, should herd their animals through the market and be present in the ring with the animals.

16.6.3
You should sell animals from their pens, however you may sell them through the sale ring.

16.6.4
The sale of organic animals should be the first sale of the day at the market.

16.6.5
With our permission, you may hold sales of organic animals after other sales on the same day.
16.6.6

For the sale you must:

• arrange the collection period or sale to minimise the time animals spend in the market
• ensure that the purchaser (or the owner if they remain unsold) removes their animals as soon as possible on the day of sale
• supply the purchaser with the livestock transfer document and a copy of the vendors’ valid organic certificates before they leave the market premises, and
• ensure that organic animals are removed from the market within 12 hours of the end of the sale. We will remove the organic status of the animals if they stay at the market for any longer.

16.6.7

You must **not** sell the following animals through a certified livestock market:

• cattle over 6 months in-calf
• in-lamb ewes over 3 months in-lamb
• calves under 12 weeks old without dams, or
• lambs under 45 days old without ewes.

**Sale pens**

16.6.8

You must:

• provide enough space for all animals in a pen to lie down simultaneously
• have identified the stocking densities that allow for all animals to lie down simultaneously, and
• provide adequate straw (organic or non-organic) or sawdust as bedding in the sale pens.

16.6.9

You must offer the animals water on a regular basis whilst in the sale pens. You must:

• offer the animals water within one hour of arriving at the market premises
• offer the animals water at least once every four hours during the day, and
• increase the frequency of providing water during hot weather.
### 16.6.10 Lairage

You must:

- clean and disinfect lairage facilities before use
- bed with fresh bedding for the organic stock
- keep organic and non-organic stock separate, and
- have water available to the livestock at all times

### 16.7 Handling of livestock and animal welfare

#### 16.7.1

The farmer, or owner of the livestock, is ultimately responsible for the welfare of their animals going through the sale until they leave the market premises.

#### 16.7.2

The health and welfare of animals is fundamental to managing organic livestock. You must:

- avoid cruelty, and
- meet the needs of the animals by handling and transporting them with proper care and attention.

#### 16.7.3

You must always look after the health and well-being of the animals going through the market premises so that they enjoy the ‘five freedoms’ – freedom from:

1. malnutrition
2. physical discomfort and extremes of temperature
3. injury and disease
4. fear and distress, and
5. unnecessary restrictions of behaviour.

#### 16.7.4

You must handle all livestock with proper care and concern for their welfare and in accordance with all relevant legislation and Defra Codes of Recommendation for the Welfare of Livestock.
16.7.5
You must ensure incoming organic animals are healthy and show no signs of disease or infection.

16.7.6
You must provide properly designed handling facilities, including the points of loading and unloading, and maintain them in a good state of repair.

Note – where you need to use races and hurdles to move animals, they should be of a solid construction.

16.7.7
You may only carry a stick whilst handling animals as an extension of your arm and for self defence.

16.7.8
You must **not** hit animals with a stick or any other implement. We will withdraw your certification if you use sticks or other implements to hit livestock.

16.8 **Record keeping**

16.8.1
You must keep precise and up-to-date records so that you can demonstrate the integrity of the organic livestock that have gone through the market. You and we must be able to trace:

- the holding of origin, type and quantity of all organic livestock delivered to the market
- the type, quantities and purchasers of all organic livestock sold, and
- the type and quantity of livestock that left the market unsold.

16.8.2
Your records must show that you have complied with these standards. You must keep them for at least five years.

16.8.3
We may withhold your certification if we are concerned that your records cannot demonstrate that you have followed these standards.
16.8.4
You must keep a complaints register detailing all complaints you have received or issued, the responses given and any action you have taken.

16.9 Delivery, collection and transport

16.9.1
When you are sorting animals for unloading, loading and transportation, you must:

• use experienced staff
• make sure the staff handle the animals in a relaxed manner and in a way that minimises stress and avoids injury
• avoid the mixing of animals from different social groups, and
• make sure the animals are fit for transport.

16.9.2
You must not use unnecessary physical force on the animals, including electric goads.

16.9.3
You must not give the animals any allopathic tranquillisers prior to transport.

16.9.4
Although you may not be responsible for the vehicles used for transporting organic animals, you must check them and inform the owner or haulier if you find they are:

• inadequately ventilated
• inadequately bedded
• loaded so they are overcrowded
• loaded so that organic and non-organic livestock are mixed together, and
• likely to exceed eight hours transport time from start to finish (including loading and unloading).
20.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management

Poultry

20.1 Poultry within your farm system
20.2 Converting poultry
20.3 Table poultry
20.4 Laying poultry
20.5 Welfare of poultry
20.6 Feeding poultry
20.7 Housing poultry
20.8 Access to pasture and range
20.9 Transporting and handling poultry
20.1 | Poultry within your farm system

20.1.1
You must manage your organic poultry enterprise so that it either:

- is an integral part of your whole organic farm system, or
- integrates with other organic farms in the area, in terms of manure, rotation and, where possible, feed.

20.2 | Converting poultry

20.2.1
You should:

- choose a breed that is suitable to thrive under organic, free range conditions
- use slow growing strains for meat production.

20.2.2 | Revised
With our approval, you may start organic poultry production on land in its second year of conversion if:

- at least 24 months has passed since you used inputs we do not allow on the land, and
- you can demonstrate this to us at your inspection.

Note – during the six week conversion to produce organic eggs, you only need to adhere to statutory withdrawal periods for veterinary products. However, you must adhere to the organic withdrawal period (standard 10.9.15) if you treat your hens towards the end of the six weeks and the organic withdrawal period would go beyond the conversion date.

Note – for general conversion requirements please refer to sections 10.4, ‘Managing your herd or flock through conversion’, 10.5, ‘Simultaneous conversion’ and 10.6, ‘Bringing in livestock’.

20.3 | Table poultry

20.3.1
For your poultry to have organic status you must use organic chicks (from organically managed parents) when they are available.
20.3.2

With our permission and when organic chicks are not available, you may bring in non-organic chicks under three days old. However you must manage them organically from then for at least 10 weeks before you can sell them as organic. You must also send us a plan which details:

- the number of birds you need each year
- the number of organic and non-organic birds you plan to bring in
- the name of your suppliers
- whether your current suppliers will be able to supply you with organic birds in future, and
- what you are doing to make sure you get organic birds in future.

Slaughtering and selling table poultry

20.3.3

Where you use organic chicks, poults, ducklings, goslings and keets (from organically managed parents) of traditional or slow growing strains, you may slaughter and sell them as organic at any age.

Note – please refer to standard 21.1.11 for definitions of slow growing strains.

20.3.4

Where you use non-organic ‘day-old’ chicks, poults, ducklings, goslings and keets of traditional or slow growing strains, they must go through a 10 week conversion period before you can slaughter and sell them as organic.

20.3.5

The following table shows the minimum ages in days when poultry can be slaughtered as organic.

Poultry slaughter ages (days)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Using organic birds</th>
<th>Using non-organic birds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slow growing</td>
<td>Fast growing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geese</td>
<td>any age</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkeys</td>
<td>any age</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea fowl</td>
<td>any age</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chickens  any age  81  70  81  
Pekin duck  any age  49  70  70  
Muscovy duck  any age  84  70  84  
Mallard duck  any age  92  70  92  

20.4  Laying poultry

20.4.1
If you want to convert a flock you already have on your holding to produce organic eggs you must keep them to these standards for at least six weeks before you can sell their eggs as organic.

20.4.2
If you want to bring in a flock to produce organic eggs you must, in order of preference:

- use organic pullets from organically managed parents if they are available, and
- use pullets that have been kept to organic standards from three days of age if they are available.

20.4.3
With our permission, you may bring in non-organic pullets before they are 18 weeks old. Any non-organic pullets you bring in must have been reared to the veterinary and feed standards detailed in sections 10.8–10.10 and 10.13. Please contact us for more information.

20.4.4
If you bring in non-organic pullets (see standard 20.4.3) you must manage them organically from the time they arrive on your farm and for at least six weeks before they can produce organic eggs. You must also provide us with a plan that details:

- the number of birds you need each year
- the number of organic and non-organic birds you plan to bring in
- the name of your suppliers
- whether your current suppliers will be able to supply you with organic birds in future, and
- what you are doing to make sure you get organic birds in future.
20.4.5
You must not bring in:

- poultry from caged systems, or
- poultry whose beaks have been clipped or tipped.

20.5 Welfare of poultry

20.5.1
You must make sure that suitably trained or experienced personnel check your poultry at least three times a day. They should pass within three metres of each bird.

20.5.2 | Revised
You must maintain good standards of health and welfare in your flock. If you do not, we will require you to change the way you manage your operation.

20.5.3
You must monitor the health and welfare of your poultry and keep records of:

- veterinary treatments
- mortalities and the cause of death
- hock damage, and
- reject percentages and the cause of rejection.

20.5.4
You must not:

- clip primary flight feathers
- beak clip or tip
- caponise, or
- carry out any other mutilations.

20.6 Feeding poultry

20.6.1
You must:

- give your poultry access to feed at all times in daylight hours, except just before transport and/or slaughter, when you may withhold it for up to 12 hours before slaughter, and
• give all your poultry access to insoluble grit.

Note – as a guide to help you calculate your poultry feed allowances, you can use the figures below. This is only a guide. Some birds may eat more or less according to their dietary needs in different stages of their lives.

**Guidance table on daily dry matter intakes (DMI)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species/type</th>
<th>Daily DMI (kg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laying chickens</td>
<td>0.118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table chickens</td>
<td>0.077</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkeys</td>
<td>0.138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducks and geese</td>
<td>0.150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.6.3

You must **not** use:

• synthetic yolk colourants
• routine in-feed or in-water medication
• any other feed additives
• forced feeding systems, or
• synthetic amino acids.

**Access to water and light**

20.6.4

You must give your poultry access to water at all times in daylight hours.

20.6.5

You may use artificial light to prolong the day length up to 16 hours but the day must end with dusk.

Note – this does not apply to birds in the brooding phase.

**20.7 Housing poultry**

20.7.1

You should use mobile poultry housing as this will allow you greater flexibility to integrate your poultry enterprise into your whole organic farming system.
20.7.2
If your housing unit has more than 100 adult birds then you must allow the development of social groups within the unit through:

• the number and distribution of feeders, drinkers and other facilities, and
• providing partitions.

20.7.3
Your poultry housing must comply with the following list:

• minimum solid floor area: 50% covered with litter/bedding material
• maximum slatted floor area: 50%
• minimum exit/entry pop-holes: 4m/100m² of the housing available to the birds, and
• maximum area of houses (table birds only): 1,600m²/unit.

Stocking rates, nest boxes and perch space

20.7.4
Your housing and facilities must comply with the following requirements for each category of poultry you keep:

Pullets

• maximum stocking rates:
  i. in fixed housing: 10 birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)
  ii. in mobile housing: 16* birds/m² (with a maximum of 30kg/m²)

  *Note – only in mobile housing of less than 150m² floor space and which remain open at night.

You must provide a minimum of 15cm aerial perch space per pullet.

Note – if you do not already have this amount of aerial perch space per bird, you may provide this at the next flock changeover.

Note – please refer to chapter 23 for complete standards for pullet rearing.

Laying chickens

• maximum stocking rates:
  i. in fixed housing: six birds/m²
  ii. in mobile housing: six birds/m²
• maximum number of birds for each individual nest box: six
• minimum space per bird in communal nests: 120cm²/bird

Note – when calculating the internal stocking rate you should exclude the area taken up by the nest boxes.

You must provide a minimum of 18cm aerial perch space per laying chicken.

Note – if you do not already have this amount of aerial perch space per bird, you may provide this at the next flock changeover.

Table chickens

• maximum stocking rates:
  i. in fixed housing: 10 birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)
  ii. in mobile housing: 16* birds/m² (with a maximum of 30kg/m²).

  *Note – only in mobile housing of less than 150m² floor space and which remains open at night.

Turkeys

• maximum stocking rates:
  i. in fixed housing: two birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)
  ii. in mobile housing: three birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)

• minimum perch space: 40cm/bird.

Ducks

• maximum stocking rates:
  i. in fixed housing: 10 birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)
  ii. in mobile housing: 16* birds/m² (with a maximum of 30kg/m²)

  *Note – only in mobile housing of less than 150m² floor space and which remains open at night.

• minimum perch space: 40cm/bird.

Note – the perching space requirement only applies to Muscovy ducks.

Geese

• maximum stocking rates:
  i. in fixed housing: two birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)
  ii. in mobile housing: three birds/m².

Guinea fowl

• maximum stocking rates: ➤
i. in fixed housing: 10 birds/m² (with a maximum of 21kg/m²)
ii. in mobile housing: 16* birds/m² (with a maximum of 30kg/m²)

*Note – only in mobile housing of less than 150m² floor space and which remains open at night.

- minimum perch space: 20cm/bird.

20.7.5
If you install a new poultry house for pullets or laying chickens, you must provide the aerial perch space in standard 20.7.4.

20.7.6
You must install aerial perches that will allow the birds to exhibit their natural behaviour. This must ensure that birds can:

- distance themselves from bullying
- move freely around the house, and
- cannot be trapped under the perching area.

Note – the following dimensions are a guide for installing your aerial perches: distance from floor to first perch: 10cm; vertical distance between perches: 45cm; horizontal distance between perches: 30cm; distance from walls to perches: 20cm.

Note – please contact your certification officer for guidance on installing aerial perches.

20.7.7
You must site aerial perches over dung collection areas.

20.7.8
You must not count the following as providing aerial perch space for your laying chickens or pullets:

- raised or integrated slats, or
- raised or integrated bars on flooring.

20.7.9
You must not site perches over scratch areas, nest boxes or where they can contaminate feed.
Drinkers and feeders

20.7.10
You must provide the following minimum number of feeders and drinkers for your poultry:

**Layers**
- linear feeder space: 10cm/bird
- circular feeder space: 4cm/bird
- bell drinkers: one per 100 birds
- nipple drinkers: one per 10 birds
- cup drinkers: one per 10 birds.

**Table birds**
- linear feeder space: 2.5cm/bird
- circular feeder space: 33cm per 65 birds
- bell drinkers: one per 100 birds
- nipple drinkers: one per 10 birds
- cup drinkers: one per 28 birds.

**Layers and table birds**
- linear drinker space: 2.5cm/bird
- circular drinker space: 1cm/bird.

20.7.11
Between batches of poultry you must:
- clean and disinfect the house, preferably with steam, blowtorch or lime, or other disinfectants we allow (standard 10.12.14), and
- leave the poultry house empty to allow enough time to break pest cycles.

20.7.12
The litter/bedding material you use must be:
- topped up regularly, and
- kept in a dry and friable condition, suitable for scratching and dust bathing.

20.7.13
The litter/bedding material you use should be organic straw (preferably chopped) but may be:
- non-organic untreated straw (preferably chopped), or
• shavings or bark from untreated timber.

20.7.14

You must not use paper-based litter/bedding for poultry.

Flock sizes

20.7.15

The number of birds in a poultry house should not exceed:

• 500 for laying and table chickens, ducks, guinea fowl, or
• 250 for turkeys and geese.

20.7.16 | Revised

With our approval, you may have more than the number of birds per poultry house in standard 20.7.15, if we have approved it as part of your poultry management plan. We will only give you permission if:

• you can show us that you can maintain a high level of bird health and welfare
• you can maintain good environmental conditions inside the house and out on the range, and
• you can provide your birds with the area of range they need (see section 20.8 for maximum stocking densities) within the maximum ranging distances from the house:
  i. layers, geese and guinea fowl: 100m
  ii. table chickens, turkeys and ducks: 50m.

Note – your calculation of the area of range available to the birds must exclude the area taken up by the house, access roads, concrete aprons and any pasture that is being rested from poultry.

20.7.17

The number of birds in each poultry house must not exceed:

• 2,000 birds for laying chickens
• 1,000 birds for table chickens, ducks, geese and guinea fowl
• 1,000 birds for turkeys.

20.7.18

We may require you to decrease your housing unit size if there is a breakdown of health and welfare in the flock.
You must not house your poultry permanently.

**20.8 Access to pasture and range**

**20.8.1**
On pastures used by your poultry you should:

- use grass/clover leys based on fescues and other grasses that tiller
- graze sheep for sward management
- provide natural dusting areas
- give access to woodland, and
- give access to outside drinkers.

**20.8.2**
Your poultry must have:

- access to properly managed pastures which are well covered with suitable vegetation
- access to shelter at all times
- protection from predators, and
- enough cover in the free range areas to imitate their native habitat and encourage them to range fully. This can be either natural (such as trees, shrubs and cover crops) and/or artificial (such as screens and trailers).

**20.8.3**
Your poultry must have continuous and easy daytime access to pasture, except in adverse weather conditions, for:

- all the laying life of laying poultry, or
- at least two thirds of the life of table poultry.

**20.8.4**
You must rest your pasture from poultry production:

- to allow vegetation to grow back
- for health reasons, and
- to enable built-up fertility to be used.
20.8.5
For laying poultry you must rest your pasture for at least nine months between each batch, except if you have fewer than 50 birds which are not kept in runs but are free to roam.

20.8.6
For table poultry you must rest your pasture for two months per year plus one year in every three years, except:

• where the birds are on the land for less than one third of the year, or
• if you have less than 50 birds which are not kept in runs but are free to roam.

20.8.7
The following outdoor stocking rates are the maximum you can have:

• laying chickens: 1,000 birds/ha
• table chickens: 2,500 birds/ha
• ducks: 2,000 birds/ha
• geese: 600 birds/ha
• guinea fowl: 2,500 birds/ha
• turkeys: 800 birds/ha.

Waterfowl

20.8.8
Waterfowl must have access to a stream, pond or lake whenever the weather allows, with sufficient water for them to dip their heads in.

20.8.9
You must maintain and manage the water to prevent:

• the build-up of stagnant water
• the build-up of decaying vegetation
• pollution, and
• disease risk.
20.9 | Transporting and handling poultry

20.9.1
During transport you should make sure your birds have:

- enough space to rest and stand up without restriction
- protection from large fluctuations in temperature, humidity and air pressure, and
- shelter from extremes of weather.

20.9.2
You should not leave a vehicle that is loaded with poultry for any length of time unless there are suitable ventilation facilities for them.

20.9.3
You must:

- treat any unfit birds without delay, or kill them as soon as possible using approved humane slaughter methods
- protect your birds from the elements during loading, unloading, and when waiting for slaughter, and
- comply with standard 10.14.8 on maximum journey times for your poultry.
Poultry breeding flocks
21.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:
Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 20. Poultry

Poultry breeding flocks

21.1 Additional standards for poultry breeding flocks
21.1 Additional standards for poultry breeding flocks

General management

21.1.1
Organic management of poultry breeding flocks should:
• result in better standards of health and welfare for the parent birds, and
• encourage the development of immunity to help prevent disease in the offspring.

21.1.2
You must inform your national government agriculture department that you have a breeding flock. They will tell you whether you need to register it under the Poultry Breeding Flocks and Hatcheries Act.

21.1.3
Breeding hens are laying birds and must also comply with all the additional standards for laying birds (chapter 20).

21.1.4
You should:
• have no more than 1,000 breeding birds per holding so that a disease outbreak will not affect too large a proportion of the national production, and
• clean out and replenish bedding in the poultry houses regularly to prevent disease build-up.

21.1.5
If you move batches between housing systems, you must make every effort to ensure that both systems are similar to minimise stress on the birds.

21.1.6
You must provide your poultry breeding flocks with:
• access to pasture by 12 weeks old, and
• access to feed throughout the day.

21.1.7
You must not restrict feed for cockerels.
21.1.8 | Revised
With our approval, you may carry out spur blunting of cockerels.

BREEDS AND ORIGIN OF STOCK

21.1.9
You should:

• use traditional strains
• have organic management throughout the breeding chain
• have closed flocks with breeding and rearing on the same farm, and
• bring in breeding stock as day-old chicks so that there is less risk of diseases being introduced from other farms.

21.1.10
The breeds that you choose for table poultry breeding flocks must be suitable for organic, free range management and produce offspring that are hardy and ‘slow growing’.

21.1.11
We classify a breed as ‘slow growing’ where:

• the daily weight gain averaged over the life of the bird is no more than 35g per day (these figures should be taken from published breed data), and
• the maximum daily weight gain measured on the farm is never more than:
  i. 60g in the case of chickens
  ii. 105g in the case of male turkeys, or
  iii. 75g in the case of female turkeys.

Note – this complies with the most recent proposals of the European Commission.

21.1.12 | Revised
You may, with our approval, buy cockerels that have been despurred.
**Pasture and range**

**21.1.13**
You should provide fresh greens or turf from day one and give the young breeding birds access to pasture as soon as possible.

**21.1.14**
You may have up to:

- chickens: 1,000 birds/ha (10m²/bird)
- turkeys: 800 birds/ha (12.5m²/bird)
- ducks: 1,000 birds/ha (10m²/bird)
- geese: 100 birds/ha (100m²/bird).

**21.1.15**
You must rotate the pasture during the life of each flock.

**Housing**

**21.1.16**
You should have colony sizes of fewer than 100 birds.

**21.1.17**
You should not have houses (with their runs) that are next to each other. They should be entirely separate to reduce the risk of disease spreading between flocks.

**21.1.18**
The number of birds in each poultry house must **not** exceed 500 birds.
Hatcheries
22.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 20. Poultry

Hatcheries

22.1 Additional standards for hatcheries
22.1 Additional standards for hatcheries

General management

22.1.1
You must inform your national government agriculture department that you have a hatchery. They will tell you whether you should register it under the Poultry Breeding Flocks and Hatcheries Act.

Origin of stock

22.1.2
If you intend to sell day-old chicks as organic, you must:

• use fertile hatching eggs from an organically managed breeding flock, and
• mark the fertile eggs or the egg trays so that it is clear from which breeding flock they came.

22.1.3
Your hatchery should be dedicated to organic production and only hatch organic eggs.

22.1.4 Revised
With our approval, you may have a non-dedicated hatchery. We can only give you approval for a transitional period. You must provide a plan showing:

• how and when you will change to a dedicated organic hatchery
• how you will make sure you can keep the organic and the non-organic eggs and day-old chicks separate, and
• how you will ensure that there is no risk that you or anyone else could substitute non-organic eggs/chicks for organic eggs/chicks.

Hatching

22.1.5
You must have a system that keeps the handling of chicks to a minimum and reduces the risk of injury.
22.1.6
You must not remove chicks from the hatchery until they are dry enough to maintain body temperature.

22.1.7
You must examine trays on removal from the hatchery and:
• remove any dead chicks and debris, and
• humanely destroy any sick, deformed or injured chicks.

22.1.8
You must not use automatic systems for the separation and sorting of chicks.

Transporting and handling chicks

22.1.9
During holding and transport of chicks you should:
• use low light levels to reduce activity of the chicks, and
• maintain the temperature at around 24°C with a variation of no more than 3°C.

22.1.10
You must:
• deliver the day-old chicks to the rearing unit within 24 hours of removal from the hatchery
• plan transport so that you minimise waiting times
• maintain a temperature in the holding facilities and during transit that is comfortable for the chicks, and
• use transport boxes that provide:
  i. at least 21cm²/bird
  ii. enough height to allow normal posture
  iii. adequate ventilation, and
  iv. adequate warmth.
Record keeping

22.1.11
You should link your records with those of the breeders (that provide you with fertile eggs) and the grower farms. This will help you to work together to identify and resolve any related management or health issues.

22.1.12
You must have a written contingency plan that:

- describes the workings of the hatchery, and
- explains how you will make sure that the welfare of the chicks will not be compromised if there is any disruption to services in the hatchery.

22.1.13
You must keep the following records:

- the origin of eggs entering the hatchery
- the health status of the breeding flock
- the destination and transport details for chicks leaving the hatchery
- vaccinations given
- the number of chicks hatched each week
- the percentage hatch
- culls and the reasons for culling
- mortality and the causes, and
- the temperature and humidity settings in the setters and the hatchers.
Pullet rearing
23.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 6. Grassland and forage
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 20. Poultry

**Pullet rearing**

23.1 Additional standards for pullet rearing
23.1 Additional standards for pullet rearing

General management

23.1.1
You should provide fresh greens or turf from day one and give the young pullets access to pasture as soon as possible.

23.1.2
You must give the pullets access to pasture from at least 12 weeks old.

Breeds and origin of stock

23.1.3
You should have an integrated system so that you rear the pullets on the same farm where they are to spend their laying life.

23.1.4
You must use organic day-old chicks from organically managed breeding flocks if they are available.

23.1.5
With our permission, you may use non-organic chicks but you must manage them to full organic standards from less than three days old.

23.1.6
If you are rearing pullets and then moving them to another location before they start laying, you must keep the stress of moving to a minimum.

Pasture and range

23.1.7
The maximum outdoor stocking rate must not exceed 2,500 birds per hectare (4m²/bird).
23.1.8
You must rest the pasture that the pullets have access to for at least two consecutive months per year and one year in three. This will not apply:
- where birds are on the land for less than one third of the year, or
- if you have fewer than 50 birds that are free to roam without a fenced range area.

Housing

23.1.9
You must **not** have more than 2,000 pullets in a flock.

23.1.10
You should expose pullets to natural daylight as soon as possible.

23.1.11 | Revised
You may use artificial light to prolong the day length up to 16 hours but the day must end with dusk.

Note – this does not apply to birds in the brooding phase.
30
Aquaculture
30.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management

Aquaculture

30.1 Organic aquaculture systems
30.2 Managing your aquaculture system
30.3 Managing stock through conversion
30.4 Eggs and youngstock
30.5 Environmental management
30.6 Managing holding facilities
30.7 Managing water quality
30.8 Feeding organic stock
30.9 Maintaining high stock welfare
30.10 Keeping your stock healthy
30.11 Transporting live stock
30.12 Harvesting and slaughtering
30.13 Record keeping
30.1 Organic aquaculture systems

30.1.1 These standards cover the organic production of farmed fish, including both finfish and shellfish.

30.1.2 The following aquaculture principles are in addition to the relevant principles of organic production in chapter 1:

- To develop valuable and sustainable aquatic ecosystems.
- To maintain or enhance the quality of the water and water resources.
- To respect the needs of other aquatic life.

30.1.3 You should manage your organic aquaculture system to:

- produce high-quality food products free from artificial ingredients
- use the minimum amount of inputs
- have minimal environmental effects
- ensure the health and welfare of your stock by:
  i. minimising stress
  ii. reducing disease incidence
  iii. nurturing vitality, and
  iv. meeting their physiological and behavioural needs
- minimise use of veterinary products
- eliminate reliance on chemical pesticides, and
- develop local employment and services.

30.1.4 Where permitted by the statutory authority, you should combine in your aquaculture system species that:

- occupy different trophic levels or ecological niches, and
- are capable of utilising the wastes of other organically farmed fish or shellfish, for example combining the farming of salmon, shellfish and seaweeds.
30.2 Managing your aquaculture system

30.2.1
You must have an up-to-date aquaculture management plan that details how you will meet these standards. You must review the plan every year. It must address:

• conversion (see section 30.3)
• sourcing of stock (see section 30.4)
• environmental management (see section 30.5)
• managing the holding facilities (see section 30.6)
• managing water quality (see section 30.7)
• health and welfare (see sections 30.9 and 30.10), and
• any other measures necessary to comply with these standards.

30.2.2
To maintain organic integrity, you must provide all your staff with training on:

• your aquaculture management plan
• your control systems
• their responsibilities, and
• these standards.

30.2.3
You must ensure your contracts with purchasers and suppliers are agreed and understood by both parties, in particular regarding:

• terms and conditions
• product specifications
• confirmation of compliance
• return of non-compliant goods, and
• any contract changes.

30.2.4
You must:

• ensure the accuracy of calibrating, measuring and testing equipment, and
• store inputs correctly.

30.2.5
You must monitor and control all stages of production, harvesting, transportation, packing and processing operations in accordance with the current industry codes of good practice and paying particular attention to:
• fish welfare
• health control
• water quality, and
• environmental impact.

### 30.3 Managing stock through conversion

#### 30.3.1
Conversion must take place over at least one production cycle.

#### 30.3.2
At the start of conversion, you must develop and agree with us your aquaculture management plan. The conversion plan component must include:

- the management history of the unit, and
- a conversion timetable and the changes you need to make.

#### 30.3.3
You may sell your first batch of stock as organic when the conversion period is completed and:

- you have managed them to these standards throughout their life
- all your units (sites) have at least started conversion
- there is clear separation to prevent cross-contamination or accidental mixing with those still in conversion, and
- we have sent you a trading schedule identifying those fish as organic.

### Keeping both organic and non-organic stock

#### 30.3.4
You must **not**:

- have non-organic stock of the same species on the same holding
- have a non-organic operation with the same species unless you can show it is physically, financially and operationally separate (see standards 10.7.1–10.7.3), or
- switch sites or parts of sites between organic and non-organic management.
30.4 Eggs and youngstock

30.4.1 You should, where possible, use stock that:

- occurs naturally in the area, or can easily adapt to the local environment
- is bred extensively with minimum interference to the broodstock
- is reared from your own breeding programme
- is domesticated, and
- will produce a high-quality product.

30.4.2 You must use organic eggs and youngstock from organic broodstock. If you are setting up a new organic operation, you may use broodstock kept to these standards for at least 12 months before you use them for breeding.

30.4.3 With our permission, if organic stock is not available, you may use:

- non-organic mixed-sex eggs, or
- youngstock that have not been treated with any products we do not allow in these standards.

30.4.4 You must not use:

- triploid stock
- genetically engineered stock, or
- all female stock.

30.4.5 You should inspect eggs soon after fertilisation and frequently thereafter to ensure they are healthy.

30.5 Environmental management

30.5.1 You should:

- manage your operation sustainably and integrate it with the local environment
- make sure the environmental impact of your operation is minimal
- use renewable energy sources and recycled materials where possible, and
• develop area management agreements with neighbouring farmers and landowners.

30.5.2
As part of your aquaculture management plan, you must develop a detailed environmental management plan for your operation, consulting relevant experts as appropriate. This must include:

• details of the environmental loading of your operation before conversion and its impact on the surrounding area
• suitable controls or reductions of these loadings to meet the levels we require in these standards
• initiatives for positive environmental management or improvement of your local area
• measures to prevent escapes and your plans to reduce the environmental impact if escapes occur, and
• what you will do to monitor and implement the plan.

30.5.3
You must choose a location for your production unit that minimises the impact on:

• aquatic and terrestrial environments, and
• wild stocks of the same or other species.

30.5.4
You must:

• maintain and where possible enhance ecological diversity and local wildlife in your area, and
• manage aquatic and terrestrial environments connected with your operation to maintain their wildlife and conservation value.

30.5.5
You must ensure that:

• water leaving the operation is the same or better quality as that entering
• you remove suspended solids from flow-through operations and compost and spread them on organic land
• dissolved nutrients, such as phosphorus, do not cause harmful effects on the water and environment downstream, and
• you minimise the benthic impact below holding facilities.
30.5.6
You must not:

• use herbicides or other agro-chemical pesticides on any part of your operation, or
• burn plastic waste.

30.6 Managing holding facilities

30.6.1
You must ensure you design and operate your holding facilities (for example net pens, ponds, ropes and moorings) so that you:

• minimise stress and promote good health in your stock
• do not harm your stock or the environment because of the materials the facilities and equipment are made of or treated with
• can empty them without the discharge causing pollution or stock escaping, and
• minimise the risk of escapes.

30.6.2
For all holding facilities, you must:

• keep them secure and well maintained, and
• monitor them regularly. In particular, for nets, floating structures and moorings, experienced divers must check them regularly to make sure they stay secure and undamaged.

30.6.3
If using nets, you must:

• test and replace your nets according to the manufacturer’s recommendations
• make sure the netting material is smooth enough to prevent your stock being injured during stormy conditions or crowding
• inspect a net immediately if there is any suspicion that it may have been damaged
• use non-polluting methods to keep the nets clear of weed and other fouling organisms (you may use non-toxic anti-foulants provided they are approved by the UK Health and Safety Executive for aquaculture use), and
• clean nets away from remaining stock.
30.7 | Managing water quality

30.7.1
You must:

• identify and tell us of any potential sources of pollution that may affect your operation. This includes any non-organic production units in the area, and
• site your operation far enough away from any non-organic production operations and other potential sources of pollution.

30.7.2
You must:

• provide an adequate supply of high-quality water at all times, and
• ensure there is adequate water circulation for the needs of the species.

30.7.3
You should have an emergency back-up aeration system where there is a risk to stock welfare from low oxygen levels.

30.7.4
In land-based operations, you must ensure you have alarm systems and back-up facilities that can cope with water supply failure or other major problems.

30.7.5
You may use:

• back-up oxygenation systems
• borehole water in hatcheries for fry up to 5g.

30.7.6 | Revised
With our approval, you may:

• use borehole water for larger stock, but you must provide us with an up-to-date and favourable environmental impact assessment, and
• heat water by up to 10°C in hatcheries for fry up to 5g.

30.7.7
You must make sure cleaning and disinfecting procedures do not harm the surrounding environment or the water downstream.
### 30.7.8

You must regularly monitor and record the water quality parameters detailed in the table below, both ‘upstream’ and ‘downstream’ if appropriate. You must agree the frequency of these checks with the relevant environmental monitoring agency and us.

**Water quality parameters you must monitor and record:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Type of operation:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Freshwater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolved oxygen</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological oxygen demand</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammoniacal nitrogen</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolved available inorganic nitrogen</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissolved available inorganic phosphorus</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salinity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water temperature</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyll</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspended solids (turbidity)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water pumped</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water storage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow rate</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stocking density</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume of discharge</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note – you should avoid sites with large or rapid changes in any of these parameters.

### 30.7.9

You must not use:

- oxygenation systems to increase production, or
- copper-based and other toxic anti-foulants.
### 30.8 Feeding organic stock

#### 30.8.1 Revised

You should:

- allow your stock to feed from natural sources providing it is not harmful to their health and welfare
- use feeds that meet the physical and behavioural needs of the species and its life stage, and
- collect, recirculate or re-use uneaten feed.

#### 30.8.2 Revised

When providing feeds, you must:

- use feeds that meet the nutritional needs of the species and are suitable to the life stage
- use aquatic ingredients:
  
  i. of organic origin, or failing that
  ii. from wild marine resources that we recognise as independently certified as sustainable (such as by the Marine Stewardship Council), or failing that
  iii. made from the by-products of wild caught fish for human consumption
- make sure any feed ingredients of agricultural origin you use are certified as organic
- use feeding methods that minimise stress and are suitable for the species, life stage, and natural feeding behaviour
- monitor feeding behaviour
- minimise uneaten feed or feed wastage, and
- keep automatic feeding systems in good working order.

#### 30.8.3

If you use a commercial or compound feed, it must be certified by us.

#### 30.8.4

You may use:

- vitamin and mineral supplements of natural origin
- natural binders
- antioxidants of natural origin, and
- for finfish: crustacean shell or other shellfish processing waste, which must be from wild caught or organic shellfish processing.
**30.8.5 | New**

In addition to feeding crustacean shell or other shellfish processing waste in standard 30.8.4, you may use phaffia yeast:

- to provide up to a total of 10ppm astaxanthin in feeds for table fish, and
- for broodstock (but you must observe the 10ppm limit if you then sell them as organic for human consumption).

**30.8.6 | Revised**

With our approval, you may use vitamins and mineral supplements not of natural origin.

**30.8.7 | Revised**

You must **not** use:

- fishmeal or fish oil from dedicated operations that are not independently certified as sustainable
- fishmeal or other processed ingredients from the same taxa or from terrestrial animals
- artificial, synthetic or nature-identical pigments
- growth regulators, hormones or appetite stimulants
- materials that have been solvent extracted (except those extracted using ethanol and water)
- commercially produced compound or blended feeds which are not certified by us
- genetically modified organisms or products and ingredients derived from them
- synthetic binders
- high-energy diets (more than 28% oil) to increase production or to ‘fast track’, or
- any substance or material not allowed in our standards.

**30.9 | Maintaining high stock welfare**

**General management**

**30.9.1**

You should provide shade or turbidity, according to the needs of the species, especially for:

- trout
- youngstock
• shallow holding facilities, and
• land-based ponds or tanks.

30.9.2
The welfare of your stock is essential. You must always look after their physical and behavioural needs, health and well-being so that they enjoy the five freedoms – freedom from:

• malnutrition and hunger
• physical discomfort and extremes of temperature
• injury and disease
• fear and distress
• unnecessary restrictions of behaviour.

30.9.3
You must:

• manage your stock so they can carry out their basic behavioural needs
• keep stress as low as possible during all operations
• keep similar-sized stock together to minimise aggression, and
• support the whole body when handling fish.

30.9.4
You must inspect your stock at least once a day to check their health and welfare, unless weather conditions prevent this.

30.9.5
You must not:

• leave live fish out of water for more than 15 seconds unless anaesthetised
• hold live fish only by the tail, or
• throw live fish onto solid objects.

30.9.6
You must not use artificial light to:

• prolong the day length to longer than 16 hours
• manipulate smolting (smoltification) in Atlantic salmon, or
• control maturation or production in finishing stock.
**Grading and other operations**

**30.9.7**
You must use well-maintained grading equipment that does not harm stock.

**30.9.8**
In seawater systems, you must allow sufficient time for your stock to swim through grading nets (passive grading).

**30.9.9 | Revised**
You may only crowd stock when necessary for harvest, capture or treatment for a maximum of two hours.

**30.9.10**
When you crowd stock, you must monitor dissolved oxygen levels in the water and not let them fall below 6mg/l.

**30.9.11**
You must not crowd in any holding facility more than twice in any week or three times in any month, unless your vet requires this for health reasons.

**Deterring predators**

**30.9.12**
You must use protective methods to deter predators from damaging or stressing your stock. This must deter and not kill the predators or other species.

Note – you should consult relevant statutory authorities where specific predator problems arise.

**Removing morts**

**30.9.13**
You should have an airlift system to remove morts daily.
30.9.14
You must remove morts from the water in a hygienic way so that they do not contaminate the remaining stock, wildlife or the environment. You must remove them daily or at least weekly and record the cause of death.

30.9.15
You must take particular care for the welfare of broodstock when stripping them, using only competent and fully trained staff.

30.9.16
Before stripping salmonid broodstock you must anaesthetise them or slaughter them.

30.10 Keeping your stock healthy

30.10.1
You should aim to produce healthy stock with a high level of resistance to disease through:
- good stockmanship
- using suitable feed, and
- minimising stress.

30.10.2
You should treat disease by:
- promoting natural immunity
- using natural herbal treatments and homeopathic remedies
- using salt (sodium chloride) baths or flushes to prevent parasite build-up, and
- isolating diseased stock using tight quarantine procedures.

30.10.3
You must draw up a health and welfare plan with a veterinary surgeon who has appropriate knowledge of fish farming. This must be part of your aquaculture management plan and must cover:
- biosecurity
• stock management and husbandry (including feeding, handling, grading, deterring predators, transport and slaughtering)
• health and disease management
• veterinary treatments
• storage and use of chemicals
• record keeping
• training, and
• reviewing your procedures regularly.

30.10.4
You must keep your stock as healthy as possible to reduce or prevent the use of veterinary medicines.

30.10.5
You must treat your stock promptly, even if the only treatment available is prohibited by these standards and will result in your stock losing organic status.

30.10.6
If you fail to treat stock we may withdraw your organic certification.

30.10.7
You should only sell your stock as organic if there are no detectable residues of veterinary medicines in the fish.

30.10.8
When you use an unlicensed treatment under the veterinary prescribing cascade, you should request a withdrawal period from the prescribing veterinary surgeon that will, to the best of their knowledge, result in no detectable residues.

30.10.9
If you treat your stock with veterinary medicines, you must observe a withdrawal period before selling your stock as organic of (whichever is longer):

• at least 140 degree days, or
• the time taken to achieve no detectable residues.

Note – you must calculate degree days using average daily water temperatures. The time taken to achieve no detectable residues is specified in the product’s Marketing Authorisation data.
30.10.10

You may use:

- iodophor to disinfect eggs and equipment
- vaccination for specific known disease risks
- licensed anaesthetics to:
  i. handle broodstock
  ii. vaccinate individual animals
  iii. humanely slaughter injured stock
  iv. examine fish for sea lice, and
- yeast and algal derivatives (cell wall and nucleotides) to help stock overcome stressful situations or illness.

30.10.11

For any medicine (including anaesthetics) you must:

- hold a discharge consent
- dispose of it appropriately, and
- observe a minimum withdrawal period before harvest of fish as per standard 30.10.9 or standard 31.4.11.

30.10.12 | Revised

With our approval, you may use:

- chloramine T
- formalin for salmonids
- antibiotics in clinical cases where no other treatment would work, or after major trauma such as surgery or accident, or
- with vet prescription, anaesthetics not licensed for use in fish where licensed treatments can be shown to be ineffective.

30.10.13 | Revised

You must not use:

- veterinary medicines to prevent disease
- genetically engineered vaccines
- hormone treatments on fish for human consumption
- benzalkonium chloride (BZK)
- synthetic pesticides or veterinary treatments including organophosphate and avermectin based products, or
- any veterinary medicines not allowed in these standards.
30.10.14
You must develop categories to classify cause of death of morts and detail these in your health and welfare plan.

30.11 | Transporting live stock

30.11.1
When transporting stock you should make sure:

- the journey time is kept to a minimum
- the density of fish is not so high that their welfare is affected
- the stock are loaded using methods that minimise stress, are approved by your veterinary surgeon and are detailed in your health and welfare plan, and
- the transporter has enough oxygen on board for twice the planned journey time.

30.11.2
Before transporting stock you must make sure that:

- they are in good health and are settled (after grading or weighing) before transportation
- you have not used any veterinary treatments for at least three days before transportation
- before loading, you starve:
  i. smolts for at least 24 hours
  ii. fry for at least 12 hours
- you keep to all biosecurity measures in your health and welfare plan, and
- all the staff responsible for the loading, transporting and unloading are adequately trained.

30.11.3
When transporting stock you must make sure:

- the oxygen and carbon dioxide levels of the water carrying the stock are monitored on an in-cab display
- the air is supplied using an oil-free compressor to spread diffused oxygen and assist the release of harmful gases from the water
- oxygen remains at saturation level of between 90 and 110%
- there are no large changes in water temperature or pH
- you keep a full record of any mortalities or injuries, and
- when transporting stock by road, the journey time is less than six hours.
30.11.4
You may only transport juvenile fish when they are fit and healthy. You must check that they are fit and healthy before transport and remove any that are not.

30.11.5
When you net fish you must use a net with a water holding bag.

30.11.6
If you are transporting stock by helicopter you must ensure that:

• the journey lasts no more than 25 minutes
• oxygen levels are stabilised before setting off, and
• there is sufficient oxygen supply for twice the intended journey time.

30.11.7
You must **not** transport adult growing stock between operations.

30.11.8
When unloading stock you should make sure:

• it is as smooth and quick as possible, using a method approved by your veterinary surgeon detailed in your health and welfare plan, and
• the transport container’s tank floor is sloped gently to guide the stock to the discharge outlet.

30.11.9
You should release fish through ‘gentle’ valves large enough to allow more than one fish to pass through at the same time.

30.11.10
When unloading stock from transport containers you must make sure:

• water is pumped into the tanks during unloading to ensure the fish have adequate water, and
• the water temperature the stock are transferred to is similar to that in the transport container.
30.12 Harvesting and slaughtering

Harvesting

30.12.1
You should use a dedicated harvesting facility.

30.12.2
You should make sure fish for harvest:
• can swim through to the dedicated harvest facility, and
• are slaughtered on site.

30.12.3
You must:
• follow the guidance notes of the Humane Slaughter Association for the humane slaughter of salmon and trout
• handle your stock with minimal disturbance and stress, and
• in sea net pen systems, use a separate harvest pen to hold stock before slaughter.

30.12.4
You may only starve a whole net pen or pond (for the periods we allow for the species) when you are harvesting all the fish from that pen or pond.

30.12.5
You must not:
• operate a rolling harvest where you starve all fish in the holding facility and selectively grade a number for slaughter on a repeated basis, or
• starve stock to modify carcass weight or quality (body composition).

Slaughtering

30.12.6
You must:
• make stock instantly insensible as soon as you take them from the water
• make sure staff are skilled to perform their tasks efficiently and humanely
• carry out strict hygiene procedures during slaughtering and evisceration, and
• dispose of blood, viscera, disinfectants and unclean water in a way that
does not harm wildlife, farmed fish or the environment.

30.12.7
You may stun fish by:
• concussion to the head, or
• electrocution.

30.12.8
You may slaughter finfish by severing of the gill arches (exsanguination).

30.12.9
You must **not** slaughter stock using:
• ice, except for warm water shrimp
• carbon dioxide
• suffocation, leaving stock to die in the open-air, or
• exsanguination without stunning.

30.12.10
Your fish processing, storage and transport must comply with the Soil
Association food manufacturing standards (chapters 40 and 41).

30.13 **Record keeping**

30.13.1
You must keep all the relevant records that we detail in section 3.4, together
with the additional ones we identify in this section.

30.13.2
You must keep the following operational records:
• the name and position of the person with overall responsibility for the
organic operation
• details of the responsibility and authority of all other key personnel, and
their named deputies
• the name, address and telephone number of your veterinary surgeon
• staff training records
• calibration of measuring/testing equipment and instruments, and
• procedure reviews and changes.
30.13.3
You must have an individual number and label for each holding facility (for example pen or pond) and you must keep a record of:

- date installed
- age of net/rope/mooring
- dates and results of inspections
- damage found, and
- maintenance you have carried out.

30.13.4
You must keep the following general husbandry records:

- all management activities in your aquaculture management plan, and
- measurements of all water and environmental parameters.

30.13.5
You must record the nature, quantities and details of all stock harvested and sold. If you are selling direct to the consumer, you must record quantities sold on a daily basis.
Atlantic salmon
31.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 30. Aquaculture

Atlantic salmon

31.1 Conversion
31.2 Managing water quality and holding facilities
31.3 Maintaining high stock welfare
31.4 Keeping your stock healthy
31.5 Harvesting and slaughtering
31.1 | Conversion

31.1.1
You must include the following in your conversion plan:

• historical data on your sea lice monitoring programme and any sea lice treatments used at the proposed sites in the last three production cycles
• details of any salmon rivers and wild salmonid populations nearby, and
• details of any nearby seal haul-out sites, wild bird nesting areas and nature conservation designations.

31.1.2
You must not locate your operation in a special conservation area for salmon, trout or freshwater mussels.

31.2 | Managing water quality and holding facilities

31.2.1
Your operation must meet the following limits for water quality and welfare conditions:

• sea water – grade one quality sites with minimal risk of pollution
• dissolved oxygen – at least 80% air-saturated value for 90% of the time
• dissolved available inorganic nitrogen – no more than 168µg/l (winter values)
• dissolved available inorganic phosphorus – no more than 6.2µg/l (winter values)
• pH – between 7 and 9
• chlorophyll – no more than 10µg/l
• mean flush rate – moderate 5+cm/sec to strong 10+cm/sec, with the speed of current greater than one body length per second at some stage of the tidal cycle
• stocking density in saltwater net pens – maximum of 10kg/m$^3$ +/- 1%.

31.2.2
Your freshwater operations for youngstock must meet the limits for water quality and welfare conditions in standard 31.2.1.

31.2.3 | Revised
With our approval, you may operate at lower water quality levels than in standard 31.2.1. However, we would only allow this for individual fish farms with specific, mitigating characteristics.
31.2.4
You must **not** use covered on-growing and finishing systems for salmon.

31.3 **Maintaining high stock welfare**

31.3.1
You must:

- take extreme care when hand feeding newly transferred smolts until they are actively feeding and showing normal shoaling behaviour
- take part, within the scope of our standards, in your local Area Management Agreement, and
- fallow sites for at least six weeks between production cycles.

31.3.2
You must **not** have multi-year class stock on a site or in the same water body.

31.4 **Keeping your stock healthy**

31.4.1
You should:

- ensure your site is at least 5km by sea from the nearest fish farm
- use locations where hydrographic modelling suggests that the water body’s flushing time is less than seven days
- synchronise sea lice management with other sites in the same water body, and
- position and maintain pens so as to maximise water flow-through.

31.4.2
You must:

- avoid locations of importance for wild salmonid populations, and
- remove moribund fish, as they can be a source of sea lice.

31.4.3
For monitoring sea lice you must:

- keep sea lice monitoring and management procedures in your aquaculture management plan
• use sampling techniques as directed in the Code of Good Practice for Scottish Finfish Aquaculture (2006)
• count sea lice numbers every week, weather permitting
• record numbers of:
  i. juveniles (attached stages), all mobile stages and adult females of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*
  ii. the total number of *Caligus elongatus*, and
• monitor all these levels and give your sea lice data to us every month.
Note – ‘all mobile stages’ includes pre-adults, adult males and females.

31.4.4 | **New**
You do not need to undertake weekly sea lice monitoring within 140 degree-days of harvest.

31.4.5
You may use locally caught or cultivated wrasse to remove sea lice. The wrasse must have access to adequate shelter and feeding. You must include a section in your aquaculture management plan covering the welfare of the wrasse including origin, how you catch (or otherwise source), manage and dispose of them.

31.4.6
You must **not** over-fish your local wild wrasse stocks.

31.4.7
Between February and June inclusive, you should treat your salmon when average sea lice levels rise above fifteen mobile stages per ten salmon. At other times of the year, you should treat your salmon when average sea lice levels rise above thirty mobile stages per ten salmon.

31.4.8
You must **not** allow numbers of adult female lice to exceed:
• five per 10 salmon between February and June inclusive, and
• ten per 10 salmon at other times of the year.

31.4.9
With our permission, when the trigger levels in section 31.4.8 are exceeded, you may use licensed emamectin benzoate or cypermethrin-based treatments. You must follow the manufacturer’s guidelines for treatment.
provide justification from your vet or a copy of your Area Management Agreement and any other relevant supporting information.

**31.4.10**

In order to reduce the risk of sea lice developing resistance to licensed veterinary medicines, you must not:

- exceed two consecutive courses of the same treatment on any site, unless advised to do so by your vet, or
- use in-feed treatments when fish are off their food.

Note – a course of treatment means all the measures you need to take to restore the health of your animal following an illness.

**31.4.11 | Revised**

If you treat your fish with emamectin benzoate you must either:

- observe a withdrawal period before harvest of 600 degree days, or
- provide us with evidence that residues in the fish are 10ppb or less.

**31.4.12**

You must not sell your fish as organic if you treat them with more than two courses of veterinary medicines per production cycle directed against *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*, or three courses of veterinary medicines directed against any species of sea louse.

**31.5 Harvesting and slaughtering**

**31.5.1**

You may starve salmon for up to 40 degree days or 72 hours before harvest, whichever is shorter.

**31.5.2 | Revised**

We may give you approval to extend the starvation period in 31.5.1, such as when you cannot harvest the entire population of your holding facility in one working day.
Trout and arctic charr
32.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 30. Aquaculture

**Trout and arctic charr**

32.1 Conversion
32.2 Managing water quality and holding facilities
32.3 Maintaining high stock welfare
32.4 Harvesting and slaughtering
### 32.1 Conversion

#### 32.1.1

Your conversion plan must include details of:

- any nearby salmon or trout rivers and wild salmonid populations, and
- any nearby seal haul-out sites (for sea trout), wild bird nesting areas and nature conservation designations.

#### 32.1.2

You must **not** locate your operation in a special conservation area for salmon, trout or freshwater mussels.

### 32.2 Managing water quality and holding facilities

#### 32.2.1

You should:

- use a spring water supply, or a lake or river water supply with minimal risk of pollution, and
- use the water twice, except in your incubation facility.

#### 32.2.2

You must keep to the following limits for water quality and welfare conditions:

- dissolved oxygen – at least 6mg/l or 70% for trout, 65% for arctic charr, air-saturated value for 90% of the time
- biological oxygen demand – no more than 4mg/l
- ammoniacal nitrogen – no more than 0.6mg/l
- dissolved available inorganic phosphorus – no more than 100µg/l
- pH – 5.2 to 9.0
- water temperature – 4 to 18°C for trout, 1 to 18°C for arctic charr
- stocking density in running freshwater operations – no more than 20kg/m³ +/- 2%
- stocking density in net pens – no more than 10kg/m³ +/- 1% for trout, 80kg/m³ for arctic charr.

#### 32.2.3

You may use:

- pollution-free reservoir sites
• borehole water, if you give us an up-to-date Environmental Impact Assessment that demonstrates minimal impact on the water system, and
• back-up oxygenation systems when water temperature temporarily exceeds 18°C.

32.2.4
You must **not** use covered on-growing and finishing systems reliant on artificial lighting for trout.

### 32.3  Maintaining high stock welfare

32.3.1
You must take particular care for the welfare of broodstock when stripping, using only competent and fully trained staff.

32.3.2
You may slaughter broodstock before stripping.

### 32.4  Harvesting and slaughtering

32.4.1
You should starve your fish for no more than 30 degree days before harvest.

32.4.2
You must **not** starve your fish for more than seven days before harvest. This includes the time you take to transport them to a licensed processing plant for slaughtering and the holding time at that plant.
Shrimp
33.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 30. Aquaculture

Shrimp

33.1 Introduction
33.2 Conversion
33.3 Eggs and youngstock
33.4 Environmental management
33.5 Managing water quality and holding facilities
33.6 Feeding shrimp
33.7 Maintaining high stock welfare
33.8 Keeping your stock healthy
33.9 Harvesting and slaughtering
33.1 Introduction

These shrimp standards apply to farmed *Penaeid* shrimp such as *Penaeus monodon* or *Litopenaeus vannamei* using extensive and semi-intensive production systems.

33.1.2

Your operation should comply with the Soil Association Ethical Trade standards.

Note – we are currently piloting our Ethical Trade standards in the UK. Please contact us if you would like more information.

33.2 Conversion

33.2.1

You must include in your conversion plan:

- confirmation of your ownership and management control of the land, and
- details of the legal rights of any stakeholders who can use the land, water or surrounding area.

33.2.2

You may convert an existing shrimp farm that was previously an area of natural vegetation such as mangrove forest, provided:

- you set aside at least 10% of the operation as undisturbed wildlife zones
- no more than 50% of the farm was natural vegetation before construction, and
- you complete a reforestation and habitat renewal programme within three years of starting organic conversion.

33.3 Eggs and youngstock

33.3.1

You should minimise stress and promote the development of healthy youngstock well adapted to organic aquaculture by:

- establishing a breeding programme that does not rely on taking broodstock from the wild
- rearing broodstock naturally in low-stress conditions without using chemicals or mutilations, and
• breeding shrimp and rearing youngstock using methods as similar as possible to the shrimps’ natural breeding behaviour and environment.

33.3.2
You should:
• feed the shrimp larvae with a diet of at least 75% live food which is produced on site using local resources
• make sure the grow-out ponds meet the biological and physiological needs of the shrimp larvae, and
• minimise the use of veterinary medicines to promote health.

33.3.3
You must get broodstock from local organic sources.

33.3.4 | Revised
With our approval, you may:
• capture wild broodstock as long as you do not harm the welfare of the stock and the longer-term sustainability of wild populations of shrimp and other non-target species
• use non-organic broodstock until you have your own organic broodstock, or
• use sites that rely on wild seed to naturally populate the ponds.

33.3.5
If organic seed or youngstock are not available, with our permission, you may use:
• non-organic nauplii (post-hatch), or
• non-organic PL (post-larvae) as long as you manage them to full organic standards for at least the remaining two thirds of their life.

33.3.6
You must prepare your grow-out ponds carefully to receive shrimp larvae, particularly the salinity, pH, water temperature and primary productivity.

33.3.7
You must not:
• use eye ablation to stimulate maturation in female shrimp, or
• capture wild seed to supply grow-out ponds.
33.4 Environmental management

33.4.1
Your operation should help the local community, for example by sharing the by-catch from ponds and supply channels with local people.

33.4.2
Your environmental management plan must include:

- a detailed survey of the biodiversity and conservation value of each site
- a detailed survey of the hydrological properties of the water around the holding
- how you intend to keep nutrient and sediment loss from the ponds to a minimum, and
- how you will manage the banks and surrounding land and vegetation on the site.

33.4.3
You must make sure:

- development of each site does not lead to the permanent loss of natural vegetation, biodiversity or conservation value
- your shrimp farm, and its establishment, does not lead to salinisation of the surrounding local ecosystem
- you keep nutrient and sediment loss from the ponds to a minimum, and
- you manage all vegetation on the site to section 4.10 of these standards.

33.4.4
You must ensure that you keep erosion of banks, pond sides and channels to a minimum by:

- using suitable construction materials and designs
- careful control of water level and flow rates, and
- planting native plants or crop species (you must plant up at least 50% of the exposed soil).

33.4.5
You may, during construction, temporarily clear up to 5% of the high-biodiversity natural vegetation on the site. However, you must reforest or replant an equivalent-sized area with native species within three years of starting construction.
33.4.6 | Revised
With our approval, you may leave up to 75% of the soil between ponds without vegetation as long as we agree your long-term reforestation and habitat renewal programme.

33.4.7
You must not operate a shrimp farm within a nature reserve or other recognised area of conservation value.

33.5 Managing water quality and holding facilities

33.5.1
You should:
• help develop a diverse ecosystem that supplies the stock with natural food, shelter and a clean environment
• have mangrove and other natural vegetation within the ponds and on adjacent banks as wildlife refuges, and
• use ecologically balanced production systems, which minimise or avoid the need for water exchange.

33.5.2
You must:
• use a minimum of fossil fuels to pump water, without compromising the needs of the stock
• record the quantity of fuel your pumping equipment uses
• record the volume of water pumped into and out of the unit to build up a water budget for the whole shrimp farm, and
• make sure the ponds and banks support a diverse pond ecology of micro and macro flora and fauna.

33.5.3 | Revised
Your operation must not:
• have more than 5% average water exchange for the whole production cycle, or
• pump more than 35m³ water/kg of shrimp produced.

If your operation cannot meet these requirements at the start of conversion, you may with our approval, agree a plan to meet them within three years.
33.5.4

To reduce the risk of unwanted species entering the ponds and to stop the shrimp escaping, you must ensure that entrance and exit screens for all ponds:

- have an appropriate size mesh
- are regularly cleaned, and
- are maintained in a good state of repair.

33.5.5 | Revised

With our approval, you may remove unwanted species from your ponds. The method you use must not cause stress to the cultivated shrimp or to other species. If you want to remove unwanted species you must:

- use physical means where possible, and
- only use barbasco or saponine when physical removal is not possible.

33.5.6

You must put any by-product of removing unwanted species to good use, such as human consumption or composting and spreading on organic land.

33.5.7

You must not use rotenone for pest control.

33.6 Feeding shrimp

33.6.1

Your shrimp ponds should produce most of the feed required by the stock. The remainder of the feed should come from organic shrimp feed made in the region using local materials.

33.6.2

You should fertilise your shrimp ponds with locally produced nutrients (that are acceptable for use in organic farming) to stimulate phytoplankton and zooplankton production. This should include products and waste from the organic land around the shrimp farm.

Note – please refer to sections 4.7 and 4.8 for materials that you can use to fertilise your ponds.
33.6.3
You should produce organic agricultural crops to supply raw materials for the shrimp feed or develop trading relationships with other local organic units to supply them.

33.6.4
You must:
• maintain the natural productivity of the ponds so that at least 50% of feed is produced in the pond
• minimise food wastage, and
• make sure excess food left in the ponds does not cause sediment build-up and pollution.

33.6.5
You may feed up to 50% of the shrimps’ diet as certified organic feed.

33.6.6
You must not use:
• phaffia yeast
• shrimp shell
• fertilisers and manures that we do not allow (we detail these in sections 4.7 and 4.8), or
• shrimp feed that is not certified organic.

33.7 Maintaining high stock welfare

33.7.1
You must keep to the following stocking limits:
• stocking density in extensive systems – no more than 25g/m²
• stocking density in semi-intensive systems – no more than 200g/m²
• stocking density for broodstock – no more than 150g/m².

33.8 Keeping your stock healthy

33.8.1
To avoid or deal with health problems you should:
• control the flow and level of water in your ponds
• plough the pond substrate and leave it to dry in strong sunlight when the pond is empty, and
• treat stocked ponds with lime and rake the pond substrate regularly.

### 33.8.2

In semi-intensive systems you must measure:

• stock levels
• phytoplankton and zooplankton levels, and
• redox potentials and depth of the anaerobic layer in the pond substrate.

### 33.8.3

You may use:

• probiotics to control pathogenic bacteria
• hydrated lime (also called slaked lime or caustic lime) to sterilise ponds post harvest, and
• quick lime (also called burnt lime) to treat shrimp with health problems.

### 33.8.4

You must **not** use:

• formalin
• antibiotics, or
• benzalkonium chloride.

### 33.9 Harvesting and slaughtering

#### 33.9.1

You may:

• starve shrimp for up to 24 hours before harvest
• slaughter shrimp in tropical regions using ice slurry
• treat harvested stock with ascorbic acid to stop discolouration.

#### 33.9.2

You must **not**:

• harvest ponds less than seven days after fertilising them
• harvest shrimp if more than 5% have soft shells, or
• treat harvested stock with sodium metabisulphite to prevent discolouration.
Bivalves
34.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 30. Aquaculture

Bivalves

34.1 Introduction
34.2 Conversion
34.3 Site characteristics
34.4 Water quality
34.5 Equipment
34.6 Type and origin of stock
34.7 Culture methods and harvesting
34.8 Food safety
34.9 Predation
34.10 Handling and welfare
34.11 Processing and packing
34.12 Transport
34.13 Managing waste
34.1 Introduction

34.1.1 These standards cover the production of mussels (*Mytilus* species), native oysters (*Ostrea edulis*), Pacific, Japanese or cupped oyster (*Crassostrea gigas*), scallops (*Aequipecten opercularis* and *Pecten maximus*) and clams (*Mercenaria mercenaria*, *Ruditapes philippinarum*, and *Tapes decussatus*).

34.1.2 The production of bivalves to these standards should maintain and, where appropriate, enhance the biodiversity and ecological health of the production site and surrounding area.

34.2 Conversion

34.2.1 You should participate in an Area Management Agreement covering the area of organic production, where one exists.

34.2.2 Revised

With our approval, the site for organic production will not have to go through a conversion period provided you can demonstrate that you have managed your operation to these standards from the time your existing stock have been on the site.

34.2.3 You must provide us with a map of the site for organic production, including the location of other bivalve or finfish farms in the area.

34.2.4 If you bring in juvenile stock from another (nursery) site, that site must also be inspected and certified by us.

34.2.5 To minimise the risk of disease and of introducing pests, when transferring juvenile stock to your site, you must:

- adhere to the guidelines in the Association of Scottish Shellfish Growers Code of Good Practice, or equivalent, and
• source stock from areas of equal or better disease status or a certified disease-free hatchery.

### 34.3 Site characteristics

#### 34.3.1

You must:

- ensure your site for bivalve production is at least 500 metres from non-organic finfish farms
- demonstrate through hydrographic data that contamination by anti-fouling and therapeutant products from neighbouring farms will not occur, and
- provide us with a letter from the relevant local authority or the Scottish Environment Protection Agency (SEPA) to confirm that there is no known problem with high levels of contamination by heavy metals, organic compounds or sewage in the area you intend to use for bivalve production.

Note – we are likely to include in these standards specific limits on radioactivity and other contaminants after further research.

#### 34.3.2

Before you start organic production, you must:

- carry out a survey of the carrying capacity of the site you choose for organic bivalve production
- plan your production levels (for example, the number of ropes/trestles) to stay within the sustainable limits for that area, and
- include a copy of the survey and justification for your production levels in your aquaculture management plan (see standard 30.2.1).

#### 34.3.3

You must minimise the impact of your shellfish production on the seabed from drop-offs and pseudo-faeces.

### 34.4 Water quality

#### 34.4.1

Bivalve production sites must have grade A or B water quality according to the Food Standards Agency Classification of Shellfish Harvesting Areas.
34.4.2
You must keep a monthly record of water quality classification.

34.4.3
Where water quality is grade B, you must re-lay bivalves in grade A waters or depurate them according to statutory requirements.

34.5 Equipment

34.5.1
In order to minimise the visual impact of the site on the landscape you must:

• use subdued and neutral colours for floats and other structures above the water surface (except for navigational markers), and
• store equipment in a tidy and unobtrusive manner.

34.5.2
You must use nets and ropes made of durable material that is suitable for re-use.

34.5.3
After their productive life, you should recycle nets and ropes or allow them to decompose in a contained area of your land-based unit.

34.6 Type and origin of stock

34.6.1 Revised
You may use:

• wild seed for mussel and scallop production
• seed from non-organic oyster, scallop and clam hatcheries until 31 December 2018, and
• partially grown seed from non-organic oyster, scallop and clam nurseries until 31 December 2015, provided it:
  i. spends at least two thirds of its life under organic management, or
  ii. has been reared according to these standards.
34.6.2 | Revised
If you source seed from a hatchery, from 1 January 2019 you must use organically reared seed.

34.6.3
If you collect wild seed you must:
• do so in a way that does not cause lasting damage to the environment, and
• record how, where and when you collect seed to enable traceability back to the collection areas.

34.6.4
With our permission, you may harvest mussel seed by dredging. You must provide us with evidence that the dredging system you use does not have detrimental effects on the area you collect the seed from or other species.

34.7 Culture methods and harvesting

34.7.1
You may use bouchot poles for mussel cultivation.

34.7.2 | Revised
With our approval, you may buy in seeded mussel ropes, but they must be from organic production sites.

34.7.3
If you thin your mussel stocks you must on-grow the thinned mussels on the same site or on sites in the local area, or dispose of them appropriately.

34.7.4 | Revised
With our approval, you may harvest mussels and oysters by dredging. You must provide us with evidence that the dredging system you use does not have detrimental effects on the sea bed and other species. This evidence must include a survey and report on the area you dredge by an independent monitoring body.

34.7.5
You may only harvest scallops by hand.
34.7.6
You must not harvest clams by dredging.

34.8  **Food safety**

34.8.1
You must ensure that you comply with all statutory food safety requirements.

34.9  **Predation**

34.9.1
You should:

- discourage eiders from feeding in mussel production areas so their numbers do not become problematic, and
- use a variety of deterrents against predators in random and infrequent sequences to reduce habituation.

34.9.2
You may use human presence to deter predators.

34.9.3
When you are planning a new bivalve production site, you must incorporate anti-predator measures into the design of the site and cost them into development.

34.9.4
You must not use eider duck moult ing areas for commercial mussel production.

Note – in the UK, Scottish Natural Heritage and other bodies can advise on where these areas are.

34.9.5
You must regularly count and record numbers of eiders and other sea ducks on mussel production sites.

Note – you should count at consistent times of the day, ideally early in the morning before work starts on the site.
34.9.6 | Revised
You should remove starfish, crabs and other biofouling organisms by physical methods such as by hand.

34.9.7 | New
With our permission you may use lime to control starfish or other biofouling organisms on mussel lines. You must provide evidence to show that treatment is necessary – for example, yield data for treated and untreated mussel ropes.

34.9.8
You must not use predator nets.

34.10 | Handling and welfare

34.10.1
You must handle bivalves carefully at all times, avoiding shocks from physical impact or from changes in temperature. This includes handling stock during grading and on-site movements.

34.11 | Processing and packing

34.11.1
You may only use mechanical means (for example, filters) and/or UV light to treat water for depuration and/or purification purposes.

34.11.2
When depurating bivalves, you must follow industry approved operating procedures for all site depuration units.

Note – for example the Seafish ‘Guidelines for the harvesting, handling and distribution of live bivalve shellfish’.

34.11.3 | Revised
When packing oysters for dispatch to the customer, you should pack them cup-side down.
34.11.4
If you use seaweed in packaging (for aesthetic reasons), you must:
• ensure your collection of seaweed does not damage the areas where you harvest it, and
• cleanse the seaweed to reduce the risk of contaminating the bivalves.

34.12 Transport

34.12.1
During transport you must:
• avoid windchill (for example, direct exposure to fan assisted refrigeration)
• keep temperatures between 0 and 5ºC (except for scallops), and
• keep the stock moist and dark during the journey.

34.13 Managing waste

34.13.1
You must draw up a waste management plan detailing how you will manage waste from your bivalve production and processing units, including:
• how you will maximise re-use of nets and ropes
• how you will recycle waste shell and grade outs (for example, to land), and
• if not re-used or recycled, how you will appropriately dispose of:
  i. nets, ropes and socking material
  ii. waste shell, and
  iii. deadstock and grade outs.

34.13.2
You must dispose of waste from your organic production and processing units:
• in a responsible and appropriate manner, and
• according to any relevant legislation, for example the Animal By-products Regulation.

34.13.3
You should recycle shellfish waste back to an organic farming system (for example, as a fertiliser).
34.13.4
You may recycle shellfish waste back to non-organic farming systems.

34.13.5 | Revised
You may only dispose of shellfish waste at sea if:

- you carry out an environmental impact assessment which shows it does not have a detrimental effect on the area
- you have the necessary statutory licences, and
- we give you approval to do so.
Carp
Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 10. Animal welfare and general livestock management
Chapter 30. Aquaculture

Carp

35.1 Introduction
35.2 Breeding and youngstock
35.3 Managing water quality and holding facilities
35.4 Feeding carp
35.5 Maintaining high stock welfare
35.6 Harvesting
35.1 Introduction

35.1.1
These standards cover the production of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and other species grown with carp.

35.2 Breeding and youngstock

35.2.1
You should:
- allow adult carp to breed naturally
- rear young carp in ponds which are as similar to their natural environment as possible
- source breeding stock locally, when available, and record where you sourced them from, and
- stock a ratio of four females to one male for breeding carp. The females should be second year spawners.

35.2.2
You may spawn carp in Dubich ponds, providing you remove the parents carefully from the pond after spawning and transfer the fry to fry ponds.

35.2.3
With our permission, you may bring in C1 fry when there is no organic broodstock available. You must:
- manage these fish organically for at least two years before you use them for breeding, and
- demonstrate how you are progressing towards producing broodstock on the farm or to sourcing organic fry.

35.2.4
You may bring broodfish into breeding condition early using water temperature and light on sites where fry growth will be poor. You must:
- carefully hand strip the fish
- incubate and hatch the eggs in appropriate holding facilities
- transfer fry to nursery ponds
- detail these procedures in the aquaculture management plan, and
- keep records of these activities.
35.2.5

When you stock a newly prepared pond with fry, you must make careful preparations to ensure it is suitable for good fry survival. You must record details of your preparations in the aquaculture management plan.

35.2.6

You must not:

• use hormones to induce breeding in broodstock, or
• use any chemicals to control plankton populations in ponds.

35.3 Managing water quality and holding facilities

35.3.1

You should:

• manage carp ponds to enhance biodiversity and to act as a nutrient sink
• retain natural native vegetation around at least one third of the pond, extending from the water’s edge to at least two metres up the bank
• have a catching zone at the base of the pond to capture fish easily, and
• manage your pond to eliminate the need to use support systems that correct oxygen/carbon dioxide imbalances (except in emergencies).

35.3.2

The ponds you use for carp must:

• have a natural substrate and natural banks (except temporary holding facilities), and
• be possible to empty.

35.3.3

You must:

• assess the pollution risk from the surrounding land
• put in place measures to minimise contamination of the water supply, and
• record these measures in the aquaculture management plan.

35.3.4

You may house stock in artificial holding units for up to:

• three weeks from hatch for first feeding fry
• eight weeks for stock for harvesting.
35.3.5
You may introduce a few predatory fish to limit the numbers of small carp in a pond. The combined biomass of these additional species should not exceed 5% of the pond’s total and you must provide refuges for carp in the pond.

Note – predatory species you may use include pike (*Esox lucius*), perch (*Perca fluviatilis*) and zander (*Stizostedion lucioperca*).

35.3.6
You must **not** exceed the stocking densities in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Life stage</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Pond density: number per ha</th>
<th>Transport density</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brood stock (in breeding ponds)</td>
<td>4+</td>
<td>3–5 breeding groups (4 females to 1 male for each group)</td>
<td>1kg per 5l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fry/C1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10,000–20,000 first feeding fry</td>
<td>1kg per 5l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>1kg per 2.5l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3/C4</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>1kg per 2.5l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wintering ponds</td>
<td>3–4</td>
<td>4–8 carp /m²</td>
<td>1kg per 2.5l</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35.3.7
You must remove unwanted species by hand and cull them humanely.

35.4 | Feeding carp

35.4.1
You should develop local feed production systems in line with organic principles. Examples of these include producing seed cakes or culturing natural aquafeeds (including live feeds) in specialised ponds.

35.4.2
The natural productivity of the production ponds should produce enough food for the fish.
### 35.4.3

You should feed your carp with feeds that are by-products of food for human consumption.

### 35.4.4

The fish must obtain at least 50% of their feed through foraging in the pond.

### 35.4.5

You may use certified organic feeds to supplement the natural feed in the pond. You must calculate the maximum amount that you can feed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feed conversion ratio</th>
<th>Maximum feeding rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grain</td>
<td>3.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein feeds</td>
<td>1.5:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Grain**: Weight gain $\times 1.75 = \text{kg feed}$
- **Protein feeds (legumes, oil cake)**: Weight gain $\times 0.75 = \text{kg feed}$

### 35.4.6

You may use the following feeds:

- organic grains: wheat, rye, oats and barley, and
- organic protein feeds: sunflower, pumpkin, pea, pelleted oilseed cakes.

### 35.4.7

You may use organic manure or compost to increase the pond’s natural productivity. You may use these either when the pond is newly stocked or as a top-up during the growth seasons. You must include the details of how and when you fertilise ponds in the aquaculture management plan.

### 35.4.8

You must **not** use any feeds that we have not approved.

---

### 35.5 Maintaining high stock welfare

#### 35.5.1

To avoid or to prevent health problems, you should:

- control the level and flow of water into ponds
- let ponds dry out and remove excessive mud where necessary, and
• carefully rake part of the pond substrate and treat with hydrated lime where possible.

### 35.5.2

You may use:

- hydrated lime (Ca(OH)_2) at 200kg per hectare
- calciferous lime (CaCO_3), and
- dolomite (MgCO_3).

### 35.5.3 | Revised

With our approval, you may use:

- quick lime (CaO) at 150kg per hectare, and
- hypochlorite.

### 35.6 | Harvesting

#### 35.6.1 | Revised

With our approval, you may sell additional fish species that you rear in the pond as organic. You must rear them to the relevant parts of these carp standards.

#### 35.6.2

You may only crowd stock, when necessary, for harvest, capture or treatment.
70

Ethical trade
70.0 Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process

If you are a producer you must also read:

Chapter 3. Farming and growing
And the other relevant chapters for your particular production.

If you are a processor you must also read:

Chapter 40. Processes in the chain between farm and consumer
Chapter 41. Manufacturing

Ethical trade

70.1 Introduction
70.2 Certification
70.3 Employment
70.4 Trading relationships
70.5 Social and cultural conditions
70.6 Origin of products and ingredients
70.7 Labelling
70.8 Record keeping
70.1 Introduction

70.1.1 The aim of these ethical trade organic standards is to ensure that there are:

- fair and ethical trading relationships
- socially responsible practices, and
- fair and ethical employment:
  i. through the whole organic food chain
  ii. from producer to retailer, and
  iii. in both developing and developed countries.

The third of IFOAM’s ‘Principles of Organic Agriculture’ is the principle of fairness.

‘Organic Agriculture should build on relationships that ensure fairness with regard to the common environment and life opportunities.

‘Fairness is characterized by equity, respect, justice and stewardship of the shared world, both among people and in their relations to other living beings.

‘This principle emphasizes that those involved in organic agriculture should conduct human relationships in a manner that ensures fairness at all levels and to all parties – farmers, workers, processors, distributors, traders and consumers. Organic agriculture should provide everyone involved with a good quality of life, and contribute to food sovereignty and reduction of poverty. It aims to produce a sufficient supply of good quality food and other products.’

Its section on social justice begins:

‘Social justice and social rights are an integral part of organic agriculture and processing.’

IFOAM ‘Norms for Organic Production and Processing’ 2005

70.1.2 Trading and employment relationships in ethical trade organic production and processing are based on fairness, mutual respect and transparency.

70.1.3 We have incorporated into these standards the relevant parts of the International Labour Organisation Conventions and Recommendations. We indicate this by ‘ILO’ plus the Convention or Recommendation number next to the standard.
70.1.4

Currently, these ethical trade standards are voluntary: you do not have to comply with them unless you wish to use the ethical trade label. However, we do recommend them and in the future we may introduce these standards as an integral and mandatory element of the Soil Association organic standards. We will consult with our members and licensees before we do this.

70.2 Certification

70.2.1

These ethical trade organic standards apply to the whole supply chain:

- retailers (where they are the brand holder)
- processors and packers
- traders and wholesalers
- importers
- agents and distributors
- co-operatives and trading groups and their members, and
- producers of primary agricultural products.

Note – our main point of contact for the whole supply chain will normally be the brand holder of the final product.

70.2.2

If you wish to sell a product as ethical trade organic:

- all organic operators in the product’s identified supply chain must comply with these standards or equivalent
- these operators must also be certified organic and meet all relevant parts of the Soil Association organic standards for the products concerned
- we must have listed the product on your trading schedule as ethical trade organic, and
- if it is an ‘own brand’ product, the brand owner must be included in the inspection and certification process for the activities relating to the product.

Note – the ethical trade certification involves an additional application, inspection and certification process to the organic certification. Where possible we will carry out both inspections at the same time.

70.2.3

If you are a brandholder, we may agree not to directly inspect each supplier in the supply chain but you must:
be able to demonstrate that all relevant suppliers comply with these ethical trade organic standards
back this up with adequate documentation and internal controls, and
have sufficient control over the supply chain.

Note – we will directly inspect the farmers, and any or all of your suppliers in case of suspicion or as part of our normal due diligence procedures.

70.3 Employment

70.3.1
Employment conditions under these ethical trade organic standards should result in employees having:

- acceptable living wages
- reasonable hours of work
- decent working conditions, and
- empowerment in the work place.

70.3.2
If you are an employer, you must have a written employment policy.

70.3.3
Employment conditions for all your employees must comply with national requirements as a minimum, or the core standards of the ILO (www.ilo.org) if these are higher.

Note – you will need to demonstrate to our inspector that you are aware of national employment legislation or the core standards of the ILO and provide evidence to show that you comply with it. Co-operatives that are employers must comply with this section 70.3 Employment.

70.3.4
You must not discriminate on the basis of:

- age
- race or caste
- gender or sexual orientation
- religion or political opinion
- nationality, including migrant workers (ILO 100)
- social origin, or
- other distinguishing traits (based on ILO 111).
70.3.5
You must only employ workers over 15 years of age, or above the compulsory school-leaving age if it is higher. You must **not** allow workers under 18 years old to undertake any hazardous employment (ILO 138).

Note – hazardous employment is defined as that likely to jeopardise the health and safety of employees and the morals of young persons (ILO 138).

70.3.6
You must provide written terms and conditions of employment to both permanent and temporary employees. The terms and conditions must specify:

- wages and method of payment
- location and type of work (job description)
- hours of work and overtime
- access to trade unions
- complaints procedure
- health and safety procedures
- disciplinary procedure
- holiday pay
- sick pay or sickness benefit
- compensation for injury, and
- other benefits such as pensions, maternity and paternity leave.

If you have more than 10 employees

70.3.7
If you have more than 10 employees, you must provide, and your employment policy must include:

- written terms and conditions of employment for casual, as well as for permanent and temporary, employees
- equal pay for equal work for all employees
- sickness or injury provision
- insurance for permanent disability or death arising out of or in the course of employment (to both national and foreign workers, ILO 110)
- paid annual holidays after a period of one year’s continuous service (ILO 132), and
- a documented disciplinary procedure with a system of warnings before any dismissal (and you must give dismissed employees full details of why you are dismissing them).
70.3.8
If you have more than 10 employees, you must ensure that they:

• only work more than 48 hours per week voluntarily to a maximum of 12 hours and only if it is stated in their terms and conditions of employment
• work no more than the hours stated in their terms and conditions of employment unless you pay them overtime, and
• have an uninterrupted rest period of at least 24 hours each week.

Note – this standard is to protect employees. We recognise that self-employed people, for example farmers and their families, are likely to work longer than 48 hours per week.

70.3.9
If you have more than 10 employees, you must have:

• a training policy
• a training record for each employee, and
• a training programme which must include:
  i. general training for staff relevant to their specific role in the operation
  ii. training in organic principles and history
  iii. organic issues relating to the business, and
  iv. staff personal development.

70.3.10
If you have more than 10 employees, you must make temporary staff permanent after they have worked for you for more than two years.

70.3.11
If you have more than 10 employees, where there are insufficient facilities for employees to buy appropriate food and drink, you should provide them with such facilities. If employees cannot buy food or drink from any other source, you must ensure that prices are reasonable and on a par with local market prices (ILO 110).

Wages

70.3.12
Wages should be the highest of either:

• the national minimum wage
• appropriate industry benchmarks, or
• the local average.

Note – you may find out what is considered an adequate wage locally, if this information is not available in the public domain.

70.3.13
You must pay:

• wages that are at least sufficient to meet basic needs and comply with local laws
• wages regularly and in legal tender (not in the form of promissory notes, vouchers or coupons), and
• overtime at a higher rate.

Note – there is EU legislation on overtime rates that you could use as a guide if you have no such legislation in your country of operation. You could build the higher rate into the calculation of the standard rate.

70.3.14
You must inform your employees:

• what the rates of pay are
• how you calculate the pay
• when pay days are
• where they can collect their wages, and
• the conditions under which you will make deductions.

70.3.15
You must properly record wage payments. Your records must show:

• rates of pay
• hours worked
• period of payment
• details of deductions
• overtime worked, and
• the net amount of wages due.

70.3.16
If you have an annual period when your business closes when you do not pay staff, you must clearly state this in their terms and conditions of employment.
Casual labour

70.3.17
You must keep records of the casual workers you employ, including their pay and conditions and duration of employment.

Workers’ unions

70.3.18
Trade unions play an important role in representing the combined interests of employees especially in situations where the workforce is disadvantaged or fragmented.

70.3.19
You must allow unions or worker representatives to:

- conduct legitimate union activities without discrimination, and
- meet with management on a regular basis to discuss working arrangements, wages, grievances and other subjects relevant to work.

70.3.20
You must allow your employees to:

- join or leave a recognised union at their discretion
- have representation to management, and
- have genuine opportunities for collective bargaining.

70.3.21
You must not restrict the movement of employees after working hours.

70.3.22 | Revised
With our approval, if you have fewer than 10 employees you do not have to comply with standards 70.3.19–70.3.20 but you must have similar measures appropriate for the nature of the employment.
Health and Safety

70.3.23
As an employer you are responsible for providing and promoting a safe and healthy working environment for your employees. You must take adequate steps to prevent accidents and injuries by minimising hazards in the working environment.

Note – hazardous employment is defined as that likely to jeopardise the health and safety of employees and the morals of young persons (ILO 138).

70.3.24
You should:

• only give tasks to employees that they are physically and mentally capable of doing
• carry out a hazard analysis for all operations
• train your employees in dealing with the hazards you identify
• be aware of and obtain the health and safety legislation in the country in which you operate, and
• be able to show that you comply with health and safety legislation.


70.3.25
If you have 10 or more employees you must have:

• a written health and safety policy, and
• supervisors or other nominated staff trained in first-aid.

Note – there is EU legislation on provision of first-aid cover which could be used as a guide in countries where there is no such legislation.

70.3.26
You must provide rest areas for your employees, particularly in busy, noisy, smelly or dusty environments.

70.3.27
You must keep records of all accidents, and the treatments administered, for five years.
Plantation estates in low income countries

70.3.28
If you employ people to work on plantation estates and provide them with their whole living environment, you have particular responsibility for their welfare and that of their families.

70.3.29
If you provide housing for your workers it must:

• be equally available to all grades of workers, and
• conform to legal requirements, including health and safety, and you must be able to demonstrate this.

70.3.30
The housing you provide must:

• be weather-proof and solid
• be spacious enough to accommodate the people living in it
• have lighting and electricity, where available locally, and
• have fire escapes, where appropriate.

Note – please keep details of the relevant legal requirements and updates on file for our inspector.

70.3.31
Housing developments you provide for your employees must have:

• adequate fuel available for collection within 1km, and
• potable water and adequate sanitation available.

70.3.32
You must ensure that employees on plantation estates have:

• adequate access to schools, which must have teachers, books and conform to legal requirements
• enough fertile land for growing a year-round supply of food crops for their family, especially fresh vegetables
• recreational facilities where they can meet and do physical recreation, and
• a nearby medical facility, preferably within the perimeter of the estate, conforming to legal requirements.
70.3.33
Day schools that the children of your employees use, should be within about 1½ hours’ walk or drive. Children should not have to sleep at school.

70.3.34
On isolated estates, shopping facilities should be at least comparable with local villages in terms of opening hours, range of products and prices.

70.4 | Trading relationships

70.4.1
Sustainable trading relationships depend on:

- trust
- transparency
- equity
- accountability, and
- continuity.

70.4.2
The trading relationship between producer or supplier and purchaser should be:

- long-term, and
- based on mutual advantage, including price stability.

70.4.3
When you establish trading relationships you must use local trading partners where appropriate and feasible.

Note – this is primarily for social reasons (supporting local producers, etc), rather than environmental.

70.4.4
If you are a brand owner you must have a purchasing policy statement that addresses your whole supply chain. You must make this publicly available and it must include:

- how you conduct price negotiations
- how you maintain on-going trading relationships
- the appeals procedure (you must keep records of all appeals and make them available to us), and
- any other relevant issues.
70.4.5
You must conduct trading negotiations in an open and transparent manner to:
• allow for shared accountability between trading partners in the supply chain, and
• enable all trading partners to know who is involved in the negotiations.

70.4.6
You may enter into an exclusive agreement but only where it:
• is fair to the producer or to other disadvantaged producers or traders
• is necessary for the trading relationship by reducing risk on both sides, and
• meets these standards on fair pricing.

Note – exclusive agreements should increase the confidence of the purchaser, who will then drive sales of the product to the benefit of both parties.

Co-operatives, associations and other trading intermediaries

70.4.7
Co-operatives, associations and other trading intermediaries are forms of trading relationship and must comply with all relevant parts of these standards.

70.4.8
In addition to the above, trading intermediaries must have a contract with their members, associates or suppliers that includes:
• payment rules, including any social premiums and the terms of any pre-payment arrangements
• obligations of the intermediary, for example the supply of any services, materials, packaging or tools, and
• obligations of the members, associates or suppliers, for example delivery and quality criteria, and disciplinary rules.

70.4.9
In addition to standard 70.4.8, co-operatives and associations must:
• have policies and activities that are transparent, to prevent fraud or dominance by any one group or individual
• have clearly defined and non-discriminatory terms of membership and be open to all those who meet these terms.
• be controlled by a board that meets regularly and is accountable to the members or associates (who therefore can dismiss the board or individuals in the event of problems)
• have an annual meeting of the members or associates and generally follow the rules of open democracy, and
• ensure members or associates have access to:
  i. minutes of all meetings
  ii. voting records
  iii. annual accounts, and
  iv. other records of activities.

## Trading and the trading contract

### 70.4.10

Your trading relationships must meet the conditions below and you must detail them in a trading contract (see standard 70.4.15).

### 70.4.11

You must ensure fair distribution of risks and rewards between the producer and others in the supply chain, where appropriate. This must include a fair approach to resolving issues of supply and demand.

Note – you should include in the contract details of how price risk and reward will be shared between trading partners. Examples of how risk and reward sharing could be detailed include:

• which partner handles what extent of price fluctuation
• the setting of a price ceiling and/or floor
• parameters for any price changes, and
• the extent of any other factors that might substitute for changes in price (for example to increase shelf space rather than increase price).

### 70.4.12

Long-term agreements to ensure stability and security: you must ensure your trading relationships, particularly with producers, are of more than one season, preferably three. If a long-term agreement is impractical or undesirable for producers, you must agree and identify this in the trading agreement.

### 70.4.13

Adequate returns: you must base the prices you agree with your trading partners on the cost of production plus an adequate margin for profit and investment. You may use independently researched prices and costs of
production as a guide. However, you must also consider the specific cost of production of the producer and any flexibility needed by either partner.

**70.4.14**

If you are purchasing and wish to delay delivery of the goods beyond a reasonable period, you must pay the costs of storage, interest and insurance.

**70.4.15**

You must have a trading contract with your trading partners, which you must agree with them. The contract must state:

- The price to be paid, or how it will be calculated or varied
- The commitment to purchase, for example, minimum price, quantity, timing and quality
- The agreed payment timescale
- Any pre-finance or credit arrangements
- The nature and extent of risk and reward sharing
- The nature of the negotiating process and each party’s rights
- The duration of the agreement and any let-out clauses (if any), and
- The complaints procedure if there is a dispute, which must be independent and respect confidentiality.

**Trade review panel**

**70.4.16**

Where we find conflicting information or differences of opinion arising between trading partners we will refer the matter to a trade review panel, which we will set up. The panel will:

- Assess the information provided, using other sources of information if appropriate, and
- Make a recommendation to our certification committee about how to resolve the matter.

**70.4.17**

You may use the trade review panel if there is a dispute regarding the ethical nature of a trading relationship you are involved in.

**70.4.18**

The trade review panel is not a price setting body, but may rule on matters of the trading relationship, including price. Its final decision may be yes, no or quantitative.
70.5 | Social and cultural conditions

70.5.1
Organic farms and businesses are social and cultural entities and have a central role to play in their communities and society in general.

70.5.2
Your business activities should have optimal social and cultural value, both internally within the business and externally in the wider community.

70.5.3
You should actively participate in, and contribute towards, the society and culture of the local and wider community.

70.5.4
Your business must make a positive social and cultural contribution over and above legal obligations. This could be in the following areas:

• training staff in organic and social awareness
• providing additional on-site services to staff, for example organic food
• sharing profit or equity interest
• supporting the organic movement and trade union movement
• educating the public and providing training within the supply chain
• organising farm visits and demonstrations or facilitating farm access to the public
• supporting or being involved in research
• supporting community cultural activities
• establishing or supporting composting and recycling programmes
• marketing your own products locally, and
• other activities, which you will need to demonstrate to us.

70.5.5
We will assess whether your business makes a positive contribution in each of the areas in the above standard. Depending on your business size, you must contribute in at least the number of areas listed below:

• businesses with up to four employees contribute in three areas
• businesses with five to 20 employees contribute in five areas
• businesses with more than 21 employees contribute in six areas

Note – we will introduce a more comprehensive system of assessing social and cultural contribution in the future.
70.5.6
You should aim to progressively increase your social and cultural contribution score (see standards 70.5.4 and 70.5.5) over time.

70.6 Origin of products and ingredients

70.6.1
All organic ingredients in an ethical trade organic product should be ethical trade organic.

70.6.2
You should:

- source from local operators, where appropriate, and
- work with and encourage local organic organisations to develop their own ethical trade organic certification capacity.

Verification and equivalence

70.6.3
You may use organic products and ingredients certified by other certification bodies in your ethical trade organic product. However, you must:

- be able to demonstrate that the product or ingredient complies with equivalent standards to these ethical trade organic standards
- ensure that all relevant suppliers are certified as ethical trade organic for the products and ingredients concerned, and
- ensure that all relevant ingredients of products you use are ethically traded from the point of primary production.

Note – we run a programme verifying the equivalence of internationally produced organic products and ingredients. Please contact us for further information.

70.6.4
We will assess products or ingredients that you use in ethical trade organic products for certification by either:

- directly inspecting and certifying the business where there is no other national approved ethical trade organic certification ▶
• evaluating other ethical trade organic certification through on-site visits or other co-operative arrangements, or
• reviewing the inspection reports produced by other certification bodies.

70.6.5

You must not use the same ingredient as both ethical trade organic and (non-ethical trade) organic in the same product.

70.7 Labelling

70.7.1

To label your product as ‘ethical trade organic’ it must contain at least 95% (by weight) of its agricultural ingredients as ethical trade organic.

70.7.2

To label your product as ‘made with ethical trade organic’ it must contain at least 70–95% (by weight) of its agricultural ingredients as ethical trade organic. You must use one of the following phrases which must be in the same visual field as, but not be more prominent than, the sales description:

• ‘X per cent of the agricultural ingredients are produced in accordance with the rules of ethical trade organic production’
• ‘made with X per cent ethical trade organic agricultural ingredients’, or
• ‘product containing X per cent ethical trade organic agricultural ingredients’.

70.7.3

You may only display the ethical trade organic symbol on products containing 70% or more ethical trade organic ingredients.

70.7.4

You may label an individual ingredient as ethical trade organic provided that:

• all of that ingredient is produced to these standards
• the ingredient makes up more than 30% (by weight) of the agricultural ingredients
• you state the percentage (by weight) of the ingredient on the label, and
• the product complies with all other relevant aspects of these standards.
70.8 | Record keeping

70.8.1
 Besides the records in sections 3.4 and 40.6 of the Soil Association organic standards, you must also identify ethical trade organic ingredients and products separately from organic ones. This will enable our inspector to audit your ethical trade organic records.
Woodland
90.0

Standards you must read with this chapter:

Chapter 1. The principles of organic production and processing
Chapter 2. The certification process
Chapter 3. Farming and growing
Chapter 4. Crop and land management

For timber forest products you must also read:

• United Kingdom Woodland Assurance Standard (UKWAS) in the UK, or
• your country’s equivalent Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) endorsed national standard, or
• where your country has no FSC endorsed national standard, you must read the Woodmark Generic Standard

And:

• Woodmark procedures for forest certification

For non-timber forest products you must also read:

Chapter 9. Wild harvesting
Chapter 15. Beekeeping (if relevant)

Woodland

90.1 Introduction
90.2 Scope
90.3 Organic woodland certification
90.4 Woodland management
90.5 Protection from stock and game rearing
90.6 Controlling weeds, pests and disease
90.7 Woodland fertility
90.8 Managing fire
90.9 Parkland, hedgerows, veteran trees and avenues
90.10 Traditional coppice
90.11 Non-timber forest products
90.12 Agricultural production in woodland
90.1 Introduction

90.1.1 Woodland and trees form essential habitats in the ecological fabric of farms and the wider landscape and are an important resource for wildlife, people and communities. The aim of these organic woodland standards is to combine organic and sustainable woodland management principles to:

• facilitate the integration of organic production methods and woodland management
• provide opportunities for owners and managers to maximise the potential of their woodland, and
• ensure that forest, woodland, tree and soil management is carried out sustainably to maintain and increase the benefits they provide for present and future generations.

90.1.2 Sir Albert Howard, a founder of the organic farming movement, recognised woodlands and forests as embodying the principles inherent in organic farming. These organic woodland standards aim to reflect those principles.

“What are the main principles underlying Nature’s agriculture? These can most easily be seen in operation in our woods and forests.

The processes of growth and the processes of decay balance one another . . . there is never any attempt at monoculture; mixed crops and mixed farming are the rule. The forest manures itself. It makes its own humus and supplies itself with minerals. The tree is the most efficient agent available for making use of the minerals . . . it can grow anywhere, vanquish most of the other forms of vegetation, and it will leave the soil in a highly fertile condition.”

90.1.3 The three principles of organic production that are most important for organic forestry are:

• to work with natural systems and cycles
• to foster biodiversity and protect sensitive habitats, and
• to maximise use of renewable resources and minimise pollution and waste.

90.1.4 Translating these into the woodland or forest environment, with its much longer production cycle, will generally mean:

• mixed age, mixed species stands
• management for continuous cover
• no use of outside inputs (fertilisers or pesticides).

90.2 | Scope

90.2.1
These organic woodland standards cover what you must do for your farm woodland and trees, forestry, agroforestry and non-timber forest products to be certified as organic.

90.2.2
Forests, woodlands and their associated lands contribute to people’s social, economic, ecological and cultural needs. Their characteristics vary between farms and regions but they all have the potential to provide important benefits.

90.2.3
Trees, forests, woodlands, hedgerows and parkland are essential habitats on farms. They:
• contribute to ecological diversity
• provide shelter and feed for livestock
• protect soils from erosion and regulate rainfall run-off
• harbour beneficial insects for pest management, and
• provide opportunities to integrate with cropping.

90.2.4
In agroforestry there is more intimate integration of trees, crops, livestock and fish. Agroforestry management encourages the contribution of complementary benefits from all these components.

90.2.5
The standards apply to the production and harvesting of all wood and non-wood products from any woodland type, including:
• boreal, temperate and tropical forests
• plantations
• natural and semi-natural forests
• non-intervention forest
• other systems in which a forest structure is expected to develop
• farm woodland and farmland trees, and
• agroforestry.
90.2.6
Examples of products for which you can apply for certification using these and other sections of our standards that we specify, include:

- sawn wood
- charcoal
- firewood
- coppice products, and
- woodland fungi and fruits.

90.2.7
We regard FSC principles and criteria as the global benchmark of responsible forest management.

90.3 Organic woodland certification

90.3.1
For your timber and wood products to be eligible for organic status, you must comply with:

- these organic woodland standards, and
- your FSC endorsed national standard (UKWAS in the UK), or
- if your country has no FSC endorsed national standard, you must meet the Soil Association Woodmark Generic Standard in addition to these standards.

Note – the principle requirements of FSC/UKWAS are:

i. to have a detailed five-year management plan and an outline 20-year management plan
ii. to have maps of the woodland or forest area including, for example, biodiversity features, public access and felling areas, and
iii. to consult with relevant interested parties about your forest or woodland management.

Note – we will use FSC inspection procedures and scoring systems. Please ask us if you would like a copy of the Woodmark Generic Standard, FSC or UKWAS standards. To find out whether you have an endorsed national standard please look at the FSC website www.fsc.org

90.3.2
When you apply for organic woodland certification, you must manage all the forest, trees and woodland on your farm to these standards.
90.3.3 | Revised
With our approval, you may add additional separate woodland areas to your farm woodland certification.

90.3.4
For your timber to be eligible for organic status, it must come from a functional forest or woodland unit, which we must agree with you. The forest or woodland unit can consist of several separated areas, but you must manage them all under one management plan.

90.3.5
If your woodland unit is made up of several separated areas, you must convert all of them to organic woodland management at the same time.

Note – if you manage more than one woodland unit, we will use the Woodmark multiple site standard to inspect them either individually or as one whole.

90.4 | Woodland management

90.4.1
Your organic woodland management should:
• beneficially integrate farm and woodland management
• sustainably manage non-timber forest products, and
• develop the potential for woodlands to provide environmental benefits such as:
  i. fostering and improving biodiversity
  ii. revitalising the atmosphere
  iii. acting as carbon sinks, and
  iv. helping with flood control.

90.4.2
The area of your farm woodland should be appropriate for the landscape in your locality or region.

90.4.3
You should protect existing trees and woodland on your farm to maximise their potential benefits for people, wildlife and the countryside.
90.4.4

You, or a competent expert, should carry out a National Vegetation Classification (NVC) survey to an appropriate level of all woodland areas on your farm.

90.4.5

You should:

- allow and promote natural regeneration of appropriate species and quality in woodland areas
- use continuous cover systems where appropriate, and
- keep dead wood (standing and on the ground) where it does not threaten forest health or public safety.

90.4.6

If you have:

- ancient trees
- trees of particular landscape or conservation value
- areas of ancient coppice stools, or
- trees with Tree Preservation Orders

you must:

- identify them
- include them on maps, and
- detail in your FSC/UKWAS management plan how you will maintain them in the long-term.

90.4.7

You must use biodegradable chainsaw oils.

90.4.8

You must not plant on peat, moorland or unimproved grassland except with our permission.

Note – we will only consider plantings on these land types for orchards or agroforestry. In the UK you may need to complete an Environmental Impact Assessment to change the use of these habitats. Please contact the Defra helpline on 0800 028 2140.

90.4.9

You must not plough closer to tree trunks than a line drawn vertically from the outermost canopy except with our permission.
Note – we will only give permission when we have approved this as part of an agroforestry system.

**90.4.10**

You must **not**:

- plant on areas where it will have negative environmental or social effects, including those on water resources, or
- plant invasive non-native shrubs in organic woodland areas.

### 90.5 Protection from stock and game rearing

**90.5.1**

If you rear game birds and give them access to organic woodland areas you must:

- site release pens in appropriate vegetation, such as scrubby cover with some trees
- stock release pens with fewer than 700 birds per hectare
- use no more than a third of your total woodland and scrub areas for release pens, and
- feed game birds only non-GMO feeds.

**90.5.2**

To protect woodland areas from livestock and game, you must:

- control access to woodland by livestock and game to prevent damage and ensure best use of the resource, and
- protect special conservation features from damage by stock, game and driven shoots.

**90.5.3 | Revised**

With our approval, you may use straw as a base for spreading feed.

**90.5.4**

You must **not** routinely treat game birds with veterinary medicines, except for complementary therapies.
**90.6 Controlling weeds, pests and disease**

**90.6.1**
You should control weeds, pests and disease by using appropriate cultural and management methods that enhance the natural health and vitality of the trees.

**90.6.2**
To control weeds, pests and disease, you may use the methods and substances outlined in section 4.10 ‘Controlling weeds’ and section 4.11 ‘Controlling pests and disease’. Please be aware that you must get our permission before using some of these methods and substances.

**90.6.3**
You should use biological control methods to control pests and disease.

**90.6.4**
You should use composted mulch to avoid denitrifying the soil and hence the need to add fertiliser.

**90.6.5**
You should not plant conifers in areas where there is high risk from the pathogen *Heterobasidium annosum*. You should consider using alternative silvicultural systems such as continuous cover.

Note – in the UK please refer to the Forestry Commission publications and UKWAS for more information on treatment methods for *Heterobasidium annosum*.

**90.6.6**
You must **not** use:

- herbicides
- urea as a fungicidal stump treatment.

**90.7 Woodland fertility**

**90.7.1**
As a long-term production system, woodland is able to generate its own fertility through nutrient recycling and generally does not need supplementary fertilisation.
**90.7.2**
You should manage your woodland to avoid using fertilisers.

**90.7.3**
You must design new plantings to avoid the need to use fertilisers. We will ask you for evidence that you have designed new plantings to avoid using fertilisers.

**90.7.4**
You may use appropriate mycorrhizal preparations to enhance fertility in the woodland.

**90.7.5 | Revised**
If you bring in materials to increase soil fertility, you may only use the methods and substances outlined in section 4.7 ‘Manure, compost and plant wastes’ and section 4.8 ‘Mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients’. Please be aware that you must get our approval before using some of these methods and substances.

**90.7.6 | Revised**
With our approval, in agroforestry systems, you may use:

- livestock manure, compost and plant waste as outlined in section 4.7, and
- mineral fertilisers and supplementary nutrients as detailed in section 4.8.

You may only use these as a supplement to using compost, manure and plant waste.

**90.7.7**
You must **not**:

- use fertilisers to enhance the growth of healthy trees
- use any fertilisers we do not allow in sections 4.7 and 4.8, or
- chemically treat mineral fertilisers to make them more soluble.

**90.8 | Managing fire**

**90.8.1**
If you intend to use fire as a management tool, you must:

- tell us you are going to use it and in what way
- take into account traditional knowledge on how and when to use fire, and
• assess the environmental impact of using fire, for example the effect of smoke on lichen from charcoal burning.

90.8.2 | Revised

With our approval, you may burn lop and top and prunings. You must:

• justify why you need to do this, and
• carefully plan the location and density of fires and charcoal kilns to:
  i. avoid damaging coppice stools, trees and conservation features, and
  ii. minimise the health and safety risks.

90.9 Parkland, hedgerows, veteran trees and avenues

90.9.1

You should plant trees on pasture and in hedgerows where this is appropriate for the landscape.

90.9.2

You should retain mature specimen trees and dead hulks unless they are a safety hazard. If you remove trees, you should replace with a protected sapling of an appropriate species.

90.9.3

With our permission, and only in exceptional circumstances, you may remove mature specimen trees and dead hulks.

90.10 Traditional coppice

90.10.1

You may manage coppice areas on a minimum intervention basis. This may include, for example:

• singled to high forest techniques, or
• traditional coppice rotations.

90.10.2

If you are managing your coppice to a traditional coppice rotation, you should maintain a series of age classes through a rotation of coppice coupes or coppice with standards.
90.10.3
In addition to the FSC/UKWAS requirements (see FSC/UKWAS standards), you must detail in your five-year management plan:

• how you will preserve or enhance the long-term productive potential of the coppice areas
• the proposed coppice cycle, and
• if relevant, the species, density and management of standards within the coppice areas.

90.10.4
If you are managing your coppice area on a traditional coppice rotation, you must:

• maintain the long-term productive potential of coppice areas through on-going planting and natural regeneration and appropriate techniques such as layering
• protect coppice stools from grazing by wild animals or livestock, and
• time your coppicing to minimise the impact of your operations on the surrounding environment.

90.10.5
You may have short rotation coppice systems, provided you can comply with these woodland standards.

90.11 Non-timber forest products

90.11.1
The harvest of non-timber forest products is often very important to local communities and to the preservation of the woodland or forest. Diversity within the woodland or forest is enhanced by maintaining the ecological conditions that these products need.

90.11.2
You must manage your woodland or forest sustainably, which will ensure the sustainable harvest of non-timber forest products.

90.11.3
If you produce and sell timber and non-timber forest products you must comply with these standards and those in chapter 9 ‘Wild harvesting’ or chapter 15 ‘Beekeeping’.
You do not need to comply with these standards if you:

- only harvest and sell non-timber forest products (including bee products), and not timber products, or
- do not have management responsibility for the woodland or trees.

### 90.12 Agricultural production in woodland

#### 90.12.1
If you use woodland or forest areas for organic agriculture (for example for pigs or poultry) as well as woodland products, you must manage these areas to these organic woodland standards.

#### 90.12.2
Where you allow livestock access to woodland or forest areas, but you are not selling any woodland products as organic, you must provide us with a plan showing how you will prevent damage to the woodland. You do not need to meet these organic woodland standards.